ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

World J Pharmacol 2016 March 9; 5(1): 1-50

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJP World Journal of Pharmacology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 5 Number 1 March 9, 2016

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

World Journal of Pharmacology
Volume 5 Number 1 March 9, 2016

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Pharmacology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 9, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

World Journal of Pharmacology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
March 9, 2016

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/g_info_20160116143427.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.1

World J Pharmacol 2016 March 9; 5(1): 1-14
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

REVIEW

Novel strategies for the treatment of diabetic macular edema

Hoang M Trinh, Mary Joseph, Kishore Cholkar, Dhananjay Pal, Ashim K Mitra

Hoang M Trinh, Mary Joseph, Kishore Cholkar, Dhananjay Pal, Ashim K Mitra, Division of Pharmaceutical Sciences, School of Pharmacy, University of Missouri-Kansas City, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States

Kishore Cholkar, RiconPharma LLC, Denville, NJ 07834, United States

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this work; Trinh HM and Joseph M contributed equally to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors are supported by NIH grants R01EY09171-16- and R01EY010659-14. The authors have no other relevant affiliations or financial involvement with any organization or entity with a financial interest in or financial conflict with the subject matter or materials discussed in the manuscript apart from those disclosed.

Correspondence to: Ashim K Mitra, PhD, Division of Pharmaceutical Sciences, School of Pharmacy, University of Missouri-Kansas City, 2464 Charlotte Street, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States. mitraa@umkc.edu
Telephone: +1-816-2351615
Fax: +1-816-2355779

Received: September 25, 2015
Peer-review started: October 6, 2015
First decision: December 4, 2015
Revised: December 19, 2015
Accepted: January 5, 2016
Article in press: January 7, 2016
Published online: March 9, 2016

Abstract

Macular edema such as diabetic macular edema (DME) and diabetic retinopathy are devastating back-of-the-eye retinal diseases leading to loss of vision. This area is receiving considerable medical attention. Posterior ocular diseases are challenging to treat due to complex ocular physiology and barrier properties. Major ocular barriers are static (corneal epithelium, corneal stroma, and blood-aqueous barrier) and dynamic barriers (blood-retinal barrier, conjunctival blood flow, lymph flow, and tear drainage). Moreover, metabolic barriers impede posterior ocular drug delivery and treatment. To overcome such barriers and treat back-of-the-eye diseases, several strategies have been recently developed which include vitreal drainage, laser photocoagulation and treatment with biologics and/or small molecule drugs. In this article, we have provided an overview of several emerging novel strategies including nanotechnology based drug delivery approach for posterior ocular drug delivery and treatment with an emphasis on DME.

Key words: Diabetic macular edema; Photocoagulation; Retinopathy; Biologics; Vitrectomy; Corticosteroids; Nanoformulations; Laser

Core tip: Macular edema such as diabetic macular edema (DME) and diabetic retinopathy are devastating back-of-the-eye retinal diseases leading to loss of vision. The standard treatments of DME include laser photocoagulation, vitrectomy, intravitreal injections of anti-vascular endothelial growth factor biologics and steroids. In this article we have provided an overview of several emerging novel strategies including nanotechnology based drug delivery approacher for posterior ocular drug delivery and treatment with emphasis on DME.

Trinh HM, Joseph M, Cholkar K, Pal D, Mitra AK. Novel strategies for the treatment of diabetic macular edema. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(1): 1-14 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Diabetic macular edema (DME) is a chronic back-of-the-eye disease that may lead to vision loss. DME causes retina thickening due to accumulation of fluid in the center of macula (Figure 1)[1]. Chronic diseases such as diabetes, non-proliferative and proliferative diabetic retinopathy (DR) are significant factors for the onset of DME[2,3]. The exact mechanism by which diabetes leads to retinopathy is not well-delineated. However, several theories have been postulated in the literature. DR may develop due to excessive growth of leaky vascularization in the retina. According to National Eye Institute, DR progresses in four stages[4]. In brief, stage 1 *aka* mild non-proliferative retinopathy, is the initial stage where tiny abnormal blood vessels or micro aneurysms are developed. Such blood vessels appear as balloon-like swelling in the retina. With disease progression, stage 2 *aka* moderate non-proliferative retinopathy ensures blockage of blood vessels that supplies nutrition to retina. Severe non-proliferative retinopathy *aka* stage 3 is diagnosed with blockage of blood vessels thereby depriving blood flow to the retina. Under such conditions retina lacks oxygen and nutrients supply. Moreover, several cellular signals (particularly HIF-α) are triggered that cause development of new vasculature to compensate oxygen and nutrient supply. Proliferative retinopathy is termed as the final stage or the advanced stage of DR. The new abnormal blood vessels developed are fragile, and leaky. Such development is termed as neovascularization. Several factors can add to severity of DME depending on the degree of DR, length of time the subject is diabetic, type of diabetes, hypertension, fluid retention, hypoalbuminemia and hyperlipidemia. Advent of microscopic techniques such as fundus contact lens bio-microscopy or funduscopic examination are proven to aid DME diagnosis. It can be diagnosed with ocular clinical conditions such as retinal thickening within 500 μm and/or hard exudates within 500 μm or in one disk diameter from the center of macula[5].

Pathogenesis of DME is not clearly delineated in the literature. However, DME is a complex multifactorial ocular disease[6]. Blood retinal barrier (BRB) is an essential structure that regulates normal visual function. Such a physiologic barrier also regulates fluid and solute movement in and out of retina[7]. BRB is comprised of inner and outer BRB[8,9]. The inner BRB is composed of tight junctions between retinal capillary endothelial cells while the outer BRB tight junctions exist between retinal pigment epithelial cells[7]. The breakdown of inner BRB results in vasogenic edema, neural tissue impairment and ultimately vision loss, if not treated[10]. Disruption of BRB is one of the common factors for DME development[11,12].

PHYSIOLOGY OF DME

Many macro and microvascular factors along with various pathways are involved in retinal thickening, disruption of BRB and loss of pericytes[13].

Macro-vascular factors

Macro-vascular factors include Starling's law for edema, oxygen tension and shear stress.

Starling's law and macular edema: According to the Starling's law, hydrostatic blood and osmotic pressures of tissue fluid are responsible for vasogenic edema. It appears to maintain the gradients between two forces involving fluid movement between inner and outer retinal layers which is crucial to prevent DME[10]. This law is based on water accumulation caused by decreasing osmotic pressure gradient between vessel and tissue. Current strategies for DME such as vitrectomy, laser, anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (anti-VEGF) or steroids can lower osmotic pressure gradient and vascular permeability to prevent water accumulation.

Oxygen tension: In diabetic patients, the level of oxygen is reduced in the macular region. Consequently hypoxia induces VEGF expression[14,15] resulting in enhanced vascular permeability. Elevation of oxygen tension causes compensatory vasoconstriction of the retinal vessels which can reduce hydrostatic pressure, resulting in macula edema[13,16,17]. Stefánsson[18] has explained how and why vitrectomy and photocoagulation can have effects on DME and other neovascularization retinopathies due to improved ocular oxygen tension.

Shear stress: The damage of endothelial cells and decoupling caused by shear stress over time can lead to alterative fluid flow in edema. Increase in shear stress also elevates nitric oxide (NO) production, which may result in vasodilatation and elevated hydrostatic pressure[19].

Microvascular factors

Endothelial dysfunction and vascular damage due to hyperglycemia: Endothelial cells play a vital role in maintaining the structure, vascular tone and prevention of platelet and leucocyte adhesion onto vessel wall. These cells are responsible for production of vasoconstriction, a dilatation and various inflammatory mediators such as intracellular adhesion molecule, leucocyte adhesion molecule, and vascular cell adhesion molecule[20-22]. While endothelial progenitor cells play a role in repair of damaged vessels, number of these cells are highly reduced under hyperglycemic conditions[23,24].

BRB: Since endothelial cells play an important role in maintaining the integrity of BRB, damage in endothelial cells leads to disruption and leakiness of vascular beds.

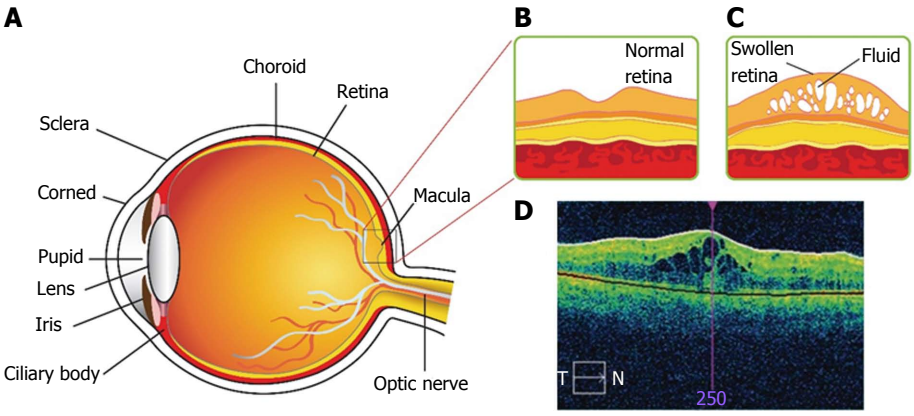


Figure 1 Diabetic macular edema at disease state. A: Structure of human eye; B: Expanded representation of macula region for normal eye; C: Expanded representation of macula region for diabetic macular edema (DME); D: Optical coherence tomography image for DME.

This increased permeability leads to accumulation of extracellular fluid. It increases the oncotic pressure due to influx of protein from blood vessels to inner retina[25,26].

Growth factors: Growth factors regulate angiogenesis by stimulating endothelial cell proliferation, migration, and survival. These factors have profound influence in many ocular diseases such as DME, DR and neo-vascular age-related macular degeneration (AMD)[27-29]. Growth factors including VEGF, placental growth factor, and hepatocyte growth factor are responsible for increased vascular permeability. VEGF appears to be an important factor for endothelial cell migration, proliferation and survival.

Inflammation: Inflammation plays a crucial role in DME pathogenesis. Leucocytes naturally adhere to vascular endothelium (leukostasis) and have the ability to create toxic superoxide radicals and enzymes[30]. Leukostasis induce vascular permeability and impair endothelial cells by producing enzymes, cytokine and free radicals[31,32]. Also inflammation motivates the occludin phosphorylation which regulates tight junction and barrier function resulting in the breakdown of BRB[33-35].

Oxidative stress: Diabetes can cause oxidative stress leading to elevated levels of NO, superoxide, peroxynitrite development and VEGF expression, all of which may alter vascular permeability and BRB breakdown[36-38].

Others factors include matrix metallo proteinases, protein kinase C, carbonic anhydrase, and angiotensin-Ⅱ that have direct or indirect role in enhancing vascular permeability that results in DME[9,39-42]. Moreover, several pivotal pathways have been implicated in DME such as angiogenesis, inflammatory and oxidative stress pathways[9,11,13,43]. Chronic hypertension and hyperglycemia cause blood vessels to become more porous allowing fluid, lipid sand erythrocytes escape. Such leakage and accumulation only cause vascular basement membrane thickening, free radical formation, non-enzymatic glycosylation and pericyte death[44]. Moreover, increased vascular permeability and capillary dropout may cause inadequate blood supply to retina.

EXISTING AND EMERGING DRUGS AND TREATMENT MODALITIES

The current treatment strategies for DME has been summarized in Figure 2 and discussed in detail as followings.

Laser photocoagulation

Despite the fact that anti-VEGF [bevacizumab, ranibizumab (RBZ) and pegaptanib] and VEGF trap (aflibercept) have emerged as treatment options for back-of-the-eye diseases, laser (focal or/and grid) photocoagulation surfaced as another treatment option for DME[45]. A recent study conducted on non-center involved (CI) DME subjects involves focal laser photocoagulation. In this study 29 eyes with non-CI received focal laser coagulation and 20 eyes with no treatment served as control. Photocoagulation treated eyes demonstrated a 5 letter gain in visual acuity in 21% subjects relative to 5% of control eyes[46]. Interestingly, this study indicated a decrease in inner and outer zone, central subfield thickness (CST) and reduction in total macula volume relative to control group[46].

Modern laser technologies and applications have been employed to treat DME. Such laser technologies include pattern scan laser photocoagulator (OptiMedica Corp, Santa Clara, CA) and NAVILAS (OD-OS Teltow, Inc. Germany). The laser beam delivery systems have short pulse duration that reduce heat thereby minimizes thermal damage at the site of application leading to patient compliance[47,48]. Other techniques such as subthreshold diode micro-pulse, navigated laser photocoagulation, pan retina photocoagulation and conventional single-spot laser application have been demonstrated to be more effective and safe to retina relative to conventional laser photocoagulation[47].

Although laser photocoagulation provides certain advantages, the associated drawbacks lessen enthusiasm and patient compliance. Drawbacks include destruction of photoreceptors due to laser photocoagulation, retinal scar formation and impedance of visual prognosis[49,50].

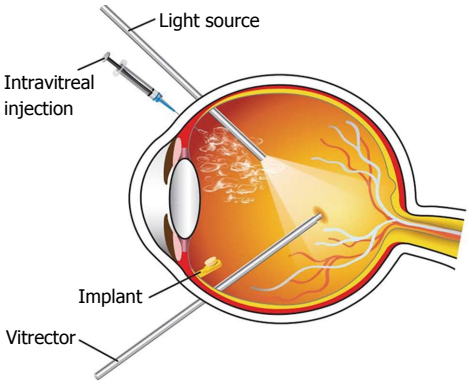


Figure 2 Treatment strategies of diabetic macular edema.

However, laser photocoagulation may be beneficial in DME subjects who do not respond to drug treatments[50]. Recently, a combination of intravitreal drug administration with laser photocoagulation have been investigated. Such treatment appears to be promising[45,51]. However, further studies may be required to establish the clinical benefit of the combination approach.

Vitrectomy

Vitreous plays an important role in the progression of DME. Studies demonstrated that improvement in vision for DME subjects may be achieved by induction of posterior vitreous detachment (PVD), pars plana vitrectomy (PPV), removal of internal limiting membrane (ILM) or taut posterior cortex[52-56]. However, the exact mechanism for vision restoration in DME with vitrectomy is yet to be delineated. Recent studies suggests that exclusion of vitreous gel may reduce the concentration of DME-promoting factors, alter vascular permeability and enhance retinal oxygen supply[11,57]. Vitrectomy may also improve vasoconstriction by lowering tissue pressure and elevating hydrostatic pressure gradient between the vascular and tissue compartments[18]. Moreover, vitrectomy improves vaso-permeability of the retinal endothelial cells and restore visual acuity. In a cohort study of vitrectomy in DME subjects, 87 eyes were evaluated visual acuity 20/63-20/400 including 54% ILM peeling, 61% epiretinal membrane peeling, and 40% panretinal photocoagulation[57]. Vitrectomy significantly reduced retinal thickness and improved visual acuity. However, vitrectomy is associated with side effects such as elevated intraocular pressure (IOP), vitreal hemorrhage, endophthalmitis, retinal detachment, induction of iris neovascularization and cataract formation[58]. Several randomized, controlled trials were conducted to investigate the side effects of vitrectomy on DME[59-65]. Such studies compared vitrectomy with laser, intravitreal steroid injection, and combinations. Vitrectomy may be applicable in DME subjects demonstrating epiretinal membrane and/or vitreomacular traction[66].

Intravitreal anti-VEGF therapy

Macromolecular therapy: VEGF plays an important role in retinal vascular permeability, breakdown of BRB and formation of macular edema. The current gold standard therapy for DME treatment is administering anti-VEGF agents[67-69]. VEGF inhibitors have demonstrated beneficial effects in DME treatment[70-74]. Current VEGF inhibitors include aflibercept (Eylea), RBZ (Lucentis), pegaptanib (Macugen), and bevacizumab (Avastin). RBZ and aflibercept are approved by Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for DME. Other anti-VEGF agents are also being considered due to cost effectiveness[75,76].

RBZ is a monoclonal antibody, approved for DME[77]. It has strong binding affinity to VEGF-A and blocks all isoforms of VEGF-A. Nguyen *et al*[78] demonstrated long term effects of RBZ in diabetic patients with DME. In this study, subjects were treated with RBZ, focal or grid laser or combination. The mean best-corrected visual acuity indicated that RBZ had significant effect to control edema in DME subjects. Moreover, a combination treatment with RBZ and focal/grid laser lowers edema residues also. Similarly, a clinical study, RIDE/RISE of RBZ demonstrated significant improvement in macula edema, accompanied by slow progress of vision loss in DME subjects[79-82].

Bevacizumab is full-length humanized monoclonal antibody with approximately three times larger molecular weight and size than RBZ. Bevacizumab also obtained FDA approval for the treatment of glioblastoma and colorectal cancer. However, it is being used as an "off-label" drug for DME treatment due to low cost. Several studies have reported bevacizumab to significantly improve macula edema and restore vision atleast partially in DME subjects[83-89]. Intravitreal injections of bevacizumab alone or in combinations with triamcinolone or photocoagulation were investigated. Interestingly, a combination of intravitreal bevacizumab and triamcinolone acetonide (TA) produced marginal improvement over bevacizumab alone in DME[90].

Aflibercept: (Eylea; Regeneron) *aka* VEGF Trap for eye is a soluble protein composed of binding domain for human VEGF receptor 1 (VEGFR1), 2 and Fc domain of human immunoglobulin G1[91,92]. Eylea has 100 times higher binding affinity to VEGF isoforms relative to bevacizumab or RBZ[93]. Moreover, aflibercept binds to special P1GF and VEGF-B and inhibits the activation of VEGFR1[93]. Korobelnik *et al*[91] conducted VISTA^{DME} and VIVID^{DME} phase three studies to compare the efficacy and safety of intravitreal aflibercept at 4 and 8 wk after initial monthly doses and laser treatment. Aflibercept demonstrated significant improvement in visual acuity over laser treatment. These results suggest that aflibercept is safe and well-tolerated. The most best corrected visual acuity (BCVA) can be achieved with aflibercept[94]. Many other studies such as VIBRANT, COPERNICUS, and GALILEO have reported significant benefits for aflibercept with better visual acuity[95-98]. Aflibercept did not cause significant difference at mild level of initial visual acuity relative to bevacizumab and RBZ. In fact, aflibercept can improve vision more effectively at worse level of initial

visual acuity[76,92].

Pegaptanib (Macugen) is a ribonucleic acid aptamer which was the first anti-VEGF approved by FDA for AMD. Macugen is another "off-label" drug for DME and has selective target to VEGF 165[99]. Several studies demonstrated pegaptanib to be safe, well-tolerated and superior efficacy in DME treatment[100-104].

Small molecule: Rapamycin or sirolimus is an immunosuppressive drug with anti-inflammation, antiangiogenic, antifibrotic, and antifungal properties. Sirolimus blocks interleukin-2-mediated signaling pathway and reduce VEGF production by inhibiting S6K1 phosphorylation[105-108]. Recently subconjunctival and intravitreal injections of sirolimus are applied for the treatment of DME, AMD and non-infectious uveitis patients which appear to be well tolerated[109-112]. Efficacy studies with sirolimus in DME subjects have also been conducted[109]. Moreover, aqueous nanomicellar topical drop of sirolimus has been developed. These nanomicellar constructs have been demonstrated to deliver sirolimus in high concentrations to back-of-the-eye tissues [retina/choroid] with topical drop[105].

Steroids and other treatments in DME

Inflammation plays a crucial role in DME pathogenesis. Though exact mechanism of corticoid action is unclear its use as anti-inflammatory agent is well recognized. It decreases VEGF activity and shows beneficial effects in DME[5,113-117]. Steroids may inhibit inflammatory cytokine production, leukostasis, and phosphorylation of cell-junction proteins[118].

TA is a synthetic steroid, recommended for DME treatment. TA displays anti-inflammatory and anti-angiogenic properties[119], improves tight-junctional levels between endothelial cells and reduces vascular leakage[120]. The widespread biological effects and large therapeutic window of intravitreal TA (IVTA) in the treatment of various ocular disorder is well known. It is prescribed as an "off-label" drug for DME and DR[121-124]. Several studies have been conducted to compare the safety and efficacy between IVTA and other treatments[67,90,125-128]. In a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials study, IVTA demonstrated better vision acuity relative to standard care for ocular inflammation[126]. Moreover, IVTA administrations demonstrated short-term efficacy in retinal vein occlusion[129]. However intravitreal administration of IVTA, can also elevate IOP, accelerate cataract formation and cause other associated side effects such as endophthalmitis and pseudoendophthalmitis[130-134]. To overcome such side effects, recently aqueous nanomicellar topical drop of dexamethasone has been reported from our laboratory[135,136] that delivers therapeutic levels of the steroid to both anterior and posterior ocular tissues. Other studies for DME with corticoids include biodegradable dexamethasone implant (Ozurdex), surgically implantable reservoir of fluocinolone (Retisert), the dexamethasone intravitreal implant (Posidurex), and non-bioerodible injectable fluocinolone polymer (Iluvien)[137-143].

Emerging formulations for treatment of DME

Ophthalmic complications associated with diabetes are the leading cause of blindness in adults. In recent years, several formulations utilizing nanotechnology, anti-VEGF, VEGF trap, and implants for treating DME and other back-of-the-eye diseases are emerging. In addition, several combination therapies that involve two or more therapies together are being administered. Most of these drugs and combination therapies are either FDA approved or are in clinical trials and have shown tremendous improvement in vision to DME patients[78,144,145]. The following sections discuss different emerging formulations for treatment of DME.

CLINICAL STUDIES

Inhibition of VEGF has been indicated in AMD in recent years. Studies have shown that inhibition of VEGF can also be an effective interaction in the treatment and management of DME. Furthermore, intravitreal injection of anti-VEGF therapeutics (RBZ and aflibercept) was compared with laser monotherapy for treatment of DME on 1978 patients. Anti-VEGF therapeutics appeared to be statistically and clinically more superior to laser monotherapy[146]. Nguyen *et al*[82] conducted a phase Ⅲ randomized trial on 377 adult patients with vision loss due to DME. This study was conducted to evaluate efficacy and safety of RBZ administered at different dosages. Results indicated that after 24 mo of treatment 18.1% of sham patients gained more than 15 letters compared to 44.8% of patients treated with 0.3 mg of RBZ[82]. In addition RBZ showed rapid and sustainably improved vision with lower risk for further vision loss. This intervention significantly improved macular edema for DME patients[82].

Combination formulations are also emerging in the treatment of diseases associated with posterior segment of the eye. Combined regimens are utilized where retinopathies are not responding to one particular therapeutics strategy[147]. Liegl *et al*[51] conducted a study to evaluate a combination of laser photocoagulation and RBZ in the treatment of DME over one year period. One group receives combination therapy which involved 3 mo RBZ injections followed by laser photocoagulation. The second group is treated with RBZ injections only. BCVA is measured in both groups after treatment. An improvement in BCVA letter sore from 6.31 to 8.41 on both groups is observed. However, patients in monotherapy group require repeated RBZ injections (84%) relative to combined therapy (35%)[51]. These findings suggest that number of injections is significantly reduced with combination therapy. This may be beneficial to subjects since frequent intravitreal injections may result in local ocular complications such as endophthalmitis, retinal hemorrhage, retinal detachment and patient

noncompliance[148,149].

In addition to antibody therapeutics for treatment of DME, some promising strategies such as non-antibody drug products that have been used in the treatment and management of DME. Fluocinolone acetonide (FAc) (ILUVIEN®) was approved in 2014 by FDA for the treatment of DME. A long term follow-up study is conducted on DME subjects after receiving FAc intravitreal implant[150]. In this study subjects not responding to laser photocoagulation or anti-VEGF therapy were treated with FAc implant in one eye and anti-VEGF therapy in the contralateral eye[150]. Intravitreal FAc implant eye produced reduction in central macular thickness from 642 μm to 364 μm in the first month. On the contrary, eye treated with anti-VEGF therapy was unresponsive[150]. Similarly, another study that was conducted with FAc in chronic DME patients[151]. Results indicated an improvement of more than 15 letters on 34.0% patients treated with FAc compared to 13.4% on sham[151]. Such results provide an option for clinicians to treat subjects who do not respond to laser or anti-VEGF therapy. Moreover, FAc implant provides a long term sustained drug release of 0.2 μg/d for up to 3 years which can be more patient compliant therapy[150,151].

In this non-randomized, multicenter study, 2603 patients with macular edema and DME, Adelman *et al*[152] conducted a study to compare efficacy of anti-VEGF with triamcolone monotherapy and laser treatments. Despite the fact that all treatments revealed some improvement in visual acuity, anti-VEGF treatment showed the most improvement. However, treatment with PPV and ILM peeling exhibited improvement in vision acuity greater than anti-VEGF alone[152]. Consequently, this result indicates that treatment with ILM peeling and vitrectomy may be a better option to treat DME compared to other therapies.

Misra *et al*[153] have developed an insulin therapy that can be delivered to the retina. This is a sub-conjuctivally implantable hydrogel with thermosensitive and biodegradable properties for sustained delivery of insulin to the retina. Hydrogels are synthesized with UV photopolymerization of N-isopropylacrylamide monomer and dextran containing biodegradable oligolactate-(2-hydroxyetheyl methacrylate) units. Insulin loading efficiency was very high (98%)[153]. *In vitro* studies demonstrated that hydrogels were nontoxic when subjected to R28 retinal cells and can release active insulin for 7 d[153]. Such hydrogel implant may be utilized to load other macromolecular drugs intended to treat back-of-the-eye diseases.

Similarly, studies have been conducted to evaluate efficacy of combined treatments in DME. Vitrectomy combined with triamcinolone acetonide injection (IVTA) and macular laser photocoagulation was studied by Kim *et al*[147] for the treatment of non-tractional DME. This study was performed on 28 patients, who were sequentially subjected to vitrectomy, IVTA and macular laser photocoagulation. BCVA and CST were observed before vitrectomy, 1, 3, and 6 mo after the treatment. Results indicated substantial improvement in BCVA from 0.44 to 0.34 and from 433.3 to 310.1 for CST. These results suggest that combination of vitrectomy, IVTA and laser photocoagulation may be indicated in the treatment of DME.

Enzymatic vitrectomy for DME patients has recently been explored[154]. Diaz-Llopis *et al*[155] investigated the role of enzymatic vitrectomy through intravitreal injection of autologous plasmin enzyme in management of DME and DR. In a clinical study 63 eyes were treated with intravitreal injection of autologous plasmin enzyme and reexamined after one month for central macular thickness, BCVA and hyaloid. A second injection of this enzyme was administered to patients who did not develop PVD. Results indicated a massive improvement in central macular thickness by 100% and BCVA by 89%. However, PVD was observed to be 38% after first injection, which then improved to 51% after second injection[155]. Enzymatic vitrectomy is still new in the world of ophthalmology and further studies are required to understand the mechanism of action, efficacy and safety. Enzymatic vitrectomy may be considered as an alternative therapy for treatment of DME.

In a study with nine patients who had persistent DME, Zucchiatti *et al*[156] evaluated the effect of single injection of dexamethasone implant (0.7 mg) over 6 mo period. Results indicated a significant improvement in BCVA and central retina thickness which was sustained over 4 mo. A similar study was performed in DME patients with vitrectomized eyes for 26 wk by Boyer *et al*[139] to evaluate safety and efficacy of dexamethasone. A significant improvement in BCVA and central retinal thickness were maintained throughout the treatment period. In comparison, dexamethasone implant appeared to achieve superior outcomes in terms of BCVA, CMT with fewer injections compared to bevacizumab by Gillies *et al*[157]. Both treatments indicated excellent progress on vision impairment score. However, 11% of patients treated with dexamethasone implant lost 10 letters or more due to cataract formation[157]. FDA approved dexamethasone implant (Ozurdex) in the treatment of DME in 2014. This implant was previously approved for the treatment of non-infectious uveitis affecting posterior segment of the eye. Table 1 summarizes major clinical trials that have been performed to study biologics, steroid and implants in DME.

IN VITRO, IN VIVO AND PRE-CLINICAL STUDIES

As described earlier, DME is a back-of-the-eye disease. For local drug delivery, sub-conjunctival or intravitreal route of administration may be recommended. Since frequent injections are needed to maintain therapeutic levels, may cause complications such as retinal detachment, endophthalmitis, pseudoendophthalmitis and retina hemorrhage. Nanoparticle mediated sustained release formulations may lower frequent injections, and

Table 1 Major clinical trials performed to study biologics, steroids and implants for diabetic macular edema treatment

Trade name	Generic name	Study	Main conclusion	Ref.
Lucentis	Ranibizumab	RISE/RIDE	Ranibizumab improved vision and macular edema in DME patients	[82]
Eylea	Aflibercept	VISTA/VIVID	Intravitreal injection of aflibercept was shown to be superior compared to laser therapy in treatment of DME	[91]
Ozurdex	Dexamethasone implant	MEAD	Dexamethasone implant were well tolerated and improved BCVA in DME patients	[168]
Iluvien	Fluocinolone acetonide	FAME	Both low and high dose of Fluocinolone acetonide exhibited improved BCVA in treatment of DME	[169]

DME: Diabetic macular edema; BCVA: Best corrected visual acquit.

improve efficacy–leading to reduced side effects and improved patient compliance.

Recently, several groups have developed topical formulations for delivery to the retina. Cholkar *et al*[135] have reported a topical administration of mixed nanomicelle formulation (MNF) loaded with dexamethasone[136] rapamycin (sirolimus) and cyclosporine[158] for back-of-the-eye delivery[105]. MNF was found to be safe when tested on human retinal pigment epithelial cells (D407) and rabbit primary corneal epithelial cells *in vitro*. MNF can provide high drug loading and entrapment efficiency with an average size of 10.84 ± 0.11 nm. Furthermore, *in vivo* studies exhibited higher rapamycin concentration of 362.35 ± 56.17 ng/g in retina-choroid area but no drug was found in the lens or vitreous humor[105]. With these results, the topical administration may provide patient compliance since no injections are involved.

In addition, Fujisawa *et al*[159] have explored liposomal diclofenac eye drop formulation targeted to retina along with the aid of surface modification of liposomes. Liposomal formulation was prepared by using calcium acetate gradient method which increased entrapment efficiency from 51.3% (obtained by using hydration method) to 97%[159]. The researchers have utilized liposome surface modification with poly vinyl alcohol (PVA) or its derivatives (PVA-R) and observed that particle size of liposome with PVA modification to are 135 nm and 177 nm with PVA-R. *In vivo* studies performed on Japanese albino rabbits indicated an enhancement in accumulation of diclofenac in the retina-choroid by 1.8 fold with surface modified liposome relative to unmodified liposomes[159]. Higher entrapment efficiency may result in longer drug release. This delivery system may be suitable for the treatment of DME and other diseases associated with posterior segment of the eye.

RNA has been widely used as a therapeutic agent for treatment of wide variety of diseases. It involves modification, engineering, and/or assembly of organized materials at nanometer scale. The 117-nucleotide (nt) RNA, known as packaging RNA (pRNA) of bacteriophage and small interfering RNA (siRNA) have been widely applied in the treatment of cancer, viral infection, genetic diseases, and other diseases. Recently, Feng *et al*[160] have reported ocular delivery of pRNA (pRNA-3WJ and pRNA-X) nanoparticles and investigated distribution and clearance after subconjunctival injection. pRNA-3WJ and pRNA-X-nanoparticles labelled with Alexa647 and dsRNA were prepared and administered to mice by subconjunctival injection. It was observed that nanoparticles (pRNA-3WJ, pRNA-X and dsRNA) were distributed in corneal, sclera, and conjunctiva cells, but pRNA-X was found only in retina cells. This study suggests that RNA therapy for ocular diseases including back-of-the-eye delivery is feasible.

Similarly gene therapy for the treatment of inherited and acquired ocular diseases has been rapidly evolving in recent years. A major challenge for gene therapy is to overcome barriers associated with ocular gene delivery. This can be achieved by developing a suitable nanotechnology platform that can cross ocular barriers and deliver genes at target site. A polymer (natural or synthetic) or peptides have been employed to encapsulate DNA in polymer or peptide compacted DNA gene delivery nanoparticles[161]. Safety of compacted DNA nanoparticles for ocular delivery has also been investigated by Ding *et al*[162]. Polyethylene glycol substituted lysine peptide (CK30PEG) compacted DNA nanoparticles encapsulating EGFP vector were subretinally injected in mice at different dosages. Retina was observed at 1, 2, 4, 7 d post injection for any inflammatory signs or mediators. No inflammatory response was observed in the retina[162]. In addition, chitosan DNA nanoparticles for retinal gene delivery have been reported by Mitra *et al*[163]. Results indicate that compacted DNA nanoparticles may be exploited as gene therapies for treatment of the posterior diseases and particularly with RPE.

Carbon nanotubes are nanometer-scale tube-like cylindrical nanostructure. These cylindrical carbon molecules have unusual properties, which are valuable for nanotechnology, particularly in drug delivery. Nanotubes have also been explored for therapeutic delivery at back-of-the-eye. Panda *et al*[164] studied self-assembly dipeptide phenylalanine-α, β-hydrophenylalanine nanotubes for sustained intravitreal delivery of targeted tyrosine kinase inhibitor (pazopanib). The nanotube has a diameter and length of 15-30 nm and 1500 nm respectively. The nanotubes can be injected using 33G needle. Nanotubes loaded with a 25% w/w pazopanib were found to be nontoxic in *in vitro* studies. *In vivo* investigation was performed with pazopanib loaded nanotube for 15 d and the drug was observed in vitreous humor, retina and choroid RPE at 4.5, 5 and 2.5 times respectively compared to pazopanib solution[164].

These results suggest that nanotubes can be applied as a delivery system which may sustain higher drug concentration in ocular tissues.

Biodegradable polymers have been extensively utilized for the preparation of nanoparticles in drug delivery. Also nanoparticle in gel formulation of steroids has been reported for the treatment of macular edema by Boddu *et al*[165]. In this formulation PLGA (50:50 and 65:35) nanoparticles loaded with dexamethasone, hydrocortisone acetate, and prednisolone acetate were prepared by water in oil emulsion and then suspended in thermosensitive gel. Results indicated that entrapment efficiency for dexamethasone, hydrocortisone acetate and prednisolone acetate were 77.3%, 91.3% and 92.3% respectively. Drug release studies indicated no burst release and release kinetics followed zero order[165]. Nanoparticles suspended in thermosensitive gel may provide sustained release of drug at retina-choroid and may be exploited for DME and other ocular diseases.

A quench technology where nanoparticles in porous microparticles (NPinPMP) were prepared by superficial infusion and pressure for sustained bevacizumab delivery. The protein was coated with PLA nanoparticles and then mixed with PLGA microparticles. The particles were allowed to pass through supercritical carbon dioxide gas[166]. This allows expansion of PLGA matrix but not PLA matrix. Hence it creates porous PLGA microparticles in which encapsulated bevacizumab PLA nanoparticles are incorporated to generate NPinPMP. *In vitro* study indicated sustained release of bevacizumab for 4 mo with no change in conformation and activity[166]. Therefore, this formulation may be utilized with other protein therapeutics for the treatment of back-of-the-eye diseases and may reduce frequent injections to maintain therapeutic levels. However, size of microparticles may be controlled for intravitreal injections.

In addition, tailor made pentablock copolymer based formulation for sustained ocular delivery of protein therapeutics was extensively investigated by Patel *et al*[148,167]. Biodegradable pentablock copolymers (FDA approved) were synthesized by ring opening polymerization method using different monomers[148,167]. *In vitro* studies confirmed that polymers and monomers are safe and biocompatible when tested in ocular cell lines (APRE-19, SIRC, HCEC and RAW-264.7)[148,167]. Furthermore, pentablock nanoparticles loaded with FITC-BSA, IgG and bevacizumab were tested for particle size distribution which ranges between 320 and 355 nm. The entrapment efficiency, however, widely varied from 35% to 70%. *In vitro* studies indicate 40 d release of FITC-BSA and 60 d for IgG when nanoparticles are suspended in gel[167]. This IgG has similar molecular weight as bevacizumab, which can be delivered at the back-of-the-eye for the treatment of posterior diseases. Therefore, this formulation may be adopted to prepare other anti-VEGF therapies which can be delivered to the posterior ocular segment for DME and other retinal diseases.

DME is a disease associated with the posterior segment of the eye; therefore, it poses a significant delivery challenge. A significant portion of the drug may not reach back-of-the-eye due to associated barriers such as BRB, blood aqueous barrier, and vitreous barrier. Consequently only a small amount of drug reaches the back of eye. In order to maintain therapeutic drug levels, generally frequent intravitreal injections are required, which are not patient compliance and may cause other complications. In addition, delivery system that can sustain drug release for a prolonged period of time should be developed so that injection frequency can be minimized/avoided.

CONCLUSION

DME is a chronic disease leading to declined visual acuity and vision loss. It is a complex multifactorial disease which involves multiple pathways involving vision loss. At present, several novel drug delivery and treatment strategies have been developed to improve visual acuity and restore vision. The standard treatments of DME include laser photocoagulation, vitrectomy, intravitreal injections of anti-VEGF biologics and steroids. Because of destruction of photoreceptors due to laser photocoagulation, retinal scar formation and impedance of visual prognosis, it may be utilized in combination with vitrectomy or intravitreal injection. Moreover, the current understanding of DME pathophysiology has revealed a new therapy which includes targeted chemical mediators such as VEGF and inflammatory agents. The completion of several randomized, controlled trials in the long term may provide new therapeutics and novel delivery systems for the back-of-the-eye diseases.

REFERENCES

1 **Bandello F**, Battaglia Parodi M, Tremolada G, Lattanzio R, De Benedetto U, Iacono P. Steroids as part of combination treatment: the future for the management of macular edema? *Ophthalmologica* 2010; **224** Suppl 1: 41-45 [PMID: 20714180 DOI: 10.1159/000315161]

2 **Varma R**, Bressler NM, Doan QV, Gleeson M, Danese M, Bower JK, Selvin E, Dolan C, Fine J, Colman S, Turpcu A. Prevalence of and risk factors for diabetic macular edema in the United States. *JAMA Ophthalmol* 2014; **132**: 1334-1340 [PMID: 25125075 DOI: 10.1001/jamaophthalmol.2014.2854]

3 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. National Diabetes Statistics Report 2014. [accessed 2015 Sept 1]. Available from: URL: http: //www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pubs/statsreport14/national-diabetes-report-web.pdf

4 **National Eye Institute**. Facts About Diabetic Eye Disease. Available from: URL: https: //nei.nih.gov/health/diabetic/retinopathy

5 **Romero-Aroca P**. Managing diabetic macular edema: The leading cause of diabetes blindness. *World J Diabetes* 2011; **2**: 98-104 [PMID: 21860693 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v2.i6.98]

6 **Frank RN**. DR and systemic factors. *Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol* 2011; **22**: 151-156 [PMID: 25949071 DOI: 10.4103/0974-9233.154388]

7 **Cunha-Vaz J**, Bernardes R, Lobo C. Blood-retinal barrier. *Eur J Ophthalmol* 2011; **21** Suppl 6: S3-S9 [PMID: 23264323 DOI: 10.5301/EJO.2010.6049]

8 **Cholkar KDS,** Pal D, Mitra AK. Eye: Anatomy, Physiology and Barriers to Drug Delivery. Woodhead Publishing Ltd, 2013

9 **Wenick AS**, Bressler NM. Diabetic macular edema: current and emerging therapies. *Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol* 2012; **19**: 4-12

[PMID: 22346109 DOI: 10.4103/0974-9233.92110]
10 **Klaassen I**, Van Noorden CJ, Schlingemann RO. Molecular basis of the inner blood-retinal barrier and its breakdown in diabetic macular edema and other pathological conditions. *Prog Retin Eye Res* 2013; **34**: 19-48 [PMID: 23416119 DOI: 10.1016/j.preteyeres.2013.02.001]
11 **Bhagat N**, Grigorian RA, Tutela A, Zarbin MA. Diabetic macular edema: pathogenesis and treatment. *Surv Ophthalmol* 2009; **54**: 1-32 [PMID: 19171208 DOI: 10.1016/j.survophthal.2008.10.001]
12 **Kim BY**, Smith SD, Kaiser PK. Optical coherence tomographic patterns of diabetic macular edema. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2006; **142**: 405-412 [PMID: 16935584 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2006.04.023]
13 **Ehrlich R**, Harris A, Ciulla TA, Kheradiya N, Winston DM, Wirostko B. Diabetic macular oedema: physical, physiological and molecular factors contribute to this pathological process. *Acta Ophthalmol* 2010; **88**: 279-291 [PMID: 20222885 DOI: 10.1111/j.1755-3768.2008.01501.x]
14 **Sotoodehnejadnematalahi F**, Burke B. Human activated macrophages and hypoxia: a comprehensive review of the literature. *Iran J Basic Med Sci* 2014; **17**: 820-830 [PMID: 25691922]
15 **Pham I**, Uchida T, Planes C, Ware LB, Kaner R, Matthay MA, Clerici C. Hypoxia upregulates VEGF expression in alveolar epithelial cells in vitro and in vivo. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2002; **283**: L1133-L1142 [PMID: 12376368 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.00464.2001]
16 **Tangvarasittichai S**. Oxidative stress, insulin resistance, dyslipidemia and type 2 diabetes mellitus. *World J Diabetes* 2015; **6**: 456-480 [PMID: 25897356 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v6.i3.456]
17 **Lange CA**, Stavrakas P, Luhmann UF, de Silva DJ, Ali RR, Gregor ZJ, Bainbridge JW. Intraocular oxygen distribution in advanced proliferative DR. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2011; **152**: 406-412.e3 [PMID: 21723532 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2011.02.014]
18 **Stefánsson E**. Ocular oxygenation and the treatment of DR. *Surv Ophthalmol* 2006; **51**: 364-380 [PMID: 16818083 DOI: 10.1016/j.survophthal.2006.04.005]
19 **Kohner EM**, Patel V, Rassam SM. Role of blood flow and impaired autoregulation in the pathogenesis of DR. *Diabetes* 1995; **44**: 603-607 [PMID: 7789621]
20 **Altabas V**. Diabetes, Endothelial Dysfunction, and Vascular Repair: What Should a Diabetologist Keep His Eye on? *Int J Endocrinol* 2015; **2015**: 848272 [PMID: 26089898 DOI: 10.1155/2015/848272]
21 **Georgescu A**. Vascular dysfunction in diabetes: The endothelial progenitor cells as new therapeutic strategy. *World J Diabetes* 2011; **2**: 92-97 [PMID: 21860692 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v2.i6.92]
22 **Hadi HA**, Suwaidi JA. Endothelial dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. *Vasc Health Risk Manag* 2007; **3**: 853-876 [PMID: 18200806]
23 **Huang PH**, Chen JS, Tsai HY, Chen YH, Lin FY, Leu HB, Wu TC, Lin SJ, Chen JW. Globular adiponectin improves high glucose-suppressed endothelial progenitor cell function through endothelial nitric oxide synthase dependent mechanisms. *J Mol Cell Cardiol* 2011; **51**: 109-119 [PMID: 21439968 DOI: 10.1016/j.yjmcc.2011.03.008]
24 **Chen YH**, Lin SJ, Lin FY, Wu TC, Tsao CR, Huang PH, Liu PL, Chen YL, Chen JW. High glucose impairs early and late endothelial progenitor cells by modifying nitric oxide-related but not oxidative stress-mediated mechanisms. *Diabetes* 2007; **56**: 1559-1568 [PMID: 17389326 DOI: 10.2337/db06-1103]
25 **Sikorski BL**, Malukiewicz G, Stafiej J, Lesiewska-Junk H, Raczynska D. The diagnostic function of OCT in diabetic maculopathy. *Mediators Inflamm* 2013; **2013**: 434560 [PMID: 24369444 DOI: 10.1155/2013/434560]
26 **Soliman W**, Sander B, Jørgensen TM. Enhanced optical coherence patterns of diabetic macular oedema and their correlation with the pathophysiology. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand* 2007; **85**: 613-617 [PMID: 17408388 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0420.2007.00917.x]
27 **Dabhi B**, Mistry KN, Patel H, Lal S. Vascular endothelial growth factor insertion/deletion gene polymorphism in West Indian patients of type 2 diabetes and diabetic nephropathy. *Indian J Biochem Biophys* 2015; **52**: 209-212 [PMID: 26118134]
28 **Andreoli CM**, Miller JW. Anti-vascular endothelial growth factor therapy for ocular neovascular disease. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2007; **18**: 502-508 [PMID: 18163003 DOI: 10.1097/ICU.0b013e3282f0ca54]
29 **Shams N**, Ianchulev T. Role of vascular endothelial growth factor in ocular angiogenesis. *Ophthalmol Clin North Am* 2006; **19**: 335-344 [PMID: 16935208 DOI: 10.1016/j.ohc.2006.05.005]
30 **Patel N**. Targeting leukostasis for the treatment of early DR. *Cardiovasc Hematol Disord Drug Targets* 2009; **9**: 222-229 [PMID: 19619127]
31 **Frey T**, Antonetti DA. Alterations to the blood-retinal barrier in diabetes: cytokines and reactive oxygen species. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2011; **15**: 1271-1284 [PMID: 21294655 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2011.3906]
32 **Miyamoto K**, Ogura Y. [DR and leukocytes--feasibility of anti-leukostasis therapy for DR]. *Nihon Rinsho* 2002; **60** Suppl 10: 183-188 [PMID: 12430227]
33 **Raleigh DR**, Boe DM, Yu D, Weber CR, Marchiando AM, Bradford EM, Wang Y, Wu L, Schneeberger EE, Shen L, Turner JR. Occludin S408 phosphorylation regulates tight junction protein interactions and barrier function. *J Cell Biol* 2011; **193**: 565-582 [PMID: 21536752 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.201010065]
34 **Bennett J**, Basivireddy J, Kollar A, Biron KE, Reickmann P, Jefferies WA, McQuaid S. Blood-brain barrier disruption and enhanced vascular permeability in the multiple sclerosis model EAE. *J Neuroimmunol* 2010; **229**: 180-191 [PMID: 20832870 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2010.08.011]
35 **Morgan L**, Shah B, Rivers LE, Barden L, Groom AJ, Chung R, Higazi D, Desmond H, Smith T, Staddon JM. Inflammation and dephosphorylation of the tight junction protein occludin in an experimental model of multiple sclerosis. *Neuroscience* 2007; **147**: 664-673 [PMID: 17560040 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2007.04.051]
36 **Pacher P**, Beckman JS, Liaudet L. Nitric oxide and peroxynitrite in health and disease. *Physiol Rev* 2007; **87**: 315-424 [PMID: 17237348 DOI: 10.1152/physrev.00029.2006]
37 **Awata T**, Neda T, Iizuka H, Kurihara S, Ohkubo T, Takata N, Osaki M, Watanabe M, Nakashima Y, Sawa T, Inukai K, Inoue I, Shibuya M, Mori K, Yoneya S, Katayama S. Endothelial nitric oxide synthase gene is associated with diabetic macular edema in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2004; **27**: 2184-2190 [PMID: 15333482]
38 **El-Remessy AB**, Behzadian MA, Abou-Mohamed G, Franklin T, Caldwell RW, Caldwell RB. Experimental diabetes causes breakdown of the blood-retina barrier by a mechanism involving tyrosine nitration and increases in expression of vascular endothelial growth factor and urokinase plasminogen activator receptor. *Am J Pathol* 2003; **162**: 1995-2004 [PMID: 12759255 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440[10]64332-5]
39 **Gálvez MI**. Protein kinase C inhibitors in the treatment of DR. Review. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 2011; **12**: 386-391 [PMID: 20939796]
40 **Sjølie AK**, Klein R, Porta M, Orchard T, Fuller J, Parving HH, Bilous R, Chaturvedi N. Effect of candesartan on progression and regression of retinopathy in type 2 diabetes (DIRECT-Protect 2): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 1385-1393 [PMID: 18823658 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736[08]61411-7]
41 **Navaratna D**, McGuire PG, Menicucci G, Das A. Proteolytic degradation of VE-cadherin alters the blood-retinal barrier in diabetes. *Diabetes* 2007; **56**: 2380-2387 [PMID: 17536065 DOI: 10.2337/db06-1694]
42 **Gao BB**, Clermont A, Rook S, Fonda SJ, Srinivasan VJ, Wojtkowski M, Fujimoto JG, Avery RL, Arrigg PG, Bursell SE, Aiello LP, Feener EP. Extracellular carbonic anhydrase mediates hemorrhagic retinal and cerebral vascular permeability through prekallikrein activation. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 181-188 [PMID: 17259996 DOI: 10.1038/nm1534]
43 **Singh A**, Stewart JM. Pathophysiology of diabetic macular edema. *Int Ophthalmol Clin* 2009; **49**: 1-11 [PMID: 19349783 DOI: 10.1097/IIO.0b013e31819fd164]
44 **Jain A**, Varshney N, Smith C. The evolving treatment options for

diabetic macular edema. *Int J Inflam* 2013; **2013**: 689276 [PMID: 24106640 DOI: 10.1155/2013/689276]
45 **Park YG**, Kim EY, Roh YJ. Laser-based strategies to treat diabetic macular edema: history and new promising therapies. *J Ophthalmol* 2014; **2014**: 769213 [PMID: 25332833 DOI: 10.1155/2014/769213]
46 **Perente I**, Alkin Z, Ozkaya A, Dardabounis D, Ogreden TA, Konstantinidis A, Kyratzoglou K, Yazici AT. Focal laser photocoagulation in non-center involved diabetic macular edema. *Med Hypothesis Discov Innov Ophthalmol* 2014; **3**: 9-16 [PMID: 24804275]
47 **Kozak I**, Luttrull JK. Modern retinal laser therapy. *Saudi J Ophthalmol* 2015; **29**: 137-146 [PMID: 25892934 DOI: 10.1016/j.sjopt.2014.09.001]
48 **Chalam KV**, Murthy RK, Brar V, Radhakrishnan R, Khetpal V, Grover S. Evaluation of a Novel, Non Contact, Automated Focal Laser with Integrated (NAVILAS) Fluorescein Angiography for Diabetic Macular Edema. *Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol* 2012; **19**: 158-162 [PMID: 22346133 DOI: 10.4103/0974-9233.92134]
49 **Romero-Aroca P**, Reyes-Torres J, Baget-Bernaldiz M, Blasco-Suñe C. Laser treatment for diabetic macular edema in the 21st century. *Curr Diabetes Rev* 2014; **10**: 100-112 [PMID: 24852439]
50 **Romero-Aroca P**. Is laser photocoagulation treatment currently useful in diabetic macular edema? *Med Hypothesis Discov Innov Ophthalmol* 2015; **4**: 5-8 [PMID: 25861668]
51 **Liegl R**, Langer J, Seidensticker F, Reznicek L, Haritoglou C, Ulbig MW, Neubauer AS, Kampik A, Kernt M. Comparative evaluation of combined navigated laser photocoagulation and intravitreal ranibizumab in the treatment of diabetic macular edema. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e113981 [PMID: 25541960 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0113981]
52 **Iwase T**, Oveson BC. Long-term outcome after vitrectomy for macular edema with retinal vein occlusion dividing into the occlusion site. *J Ophthalmol* 2014; **2014**: 198782 [PMID: 25371814 DOI: 10.1155/2014/198782]
53 **Hartley KL**, Smiddy WE, Flynn HW, Murray TG. Pars plana vitrectomy with internal limiting membrane peeling for diabetic macular edema. *Retina* 2008; **28**: 410-419 [PMID: 18327132 DOI: 10.1097/IAE.0b013e31816102f2]
54 **Yanyali A**, Horozoglu F, Celik E, Nohutcu AF. Long-term outcomes of pars plana vitrectomy with internal limiting membrane removal in diabetic macular edema. *Retina* 2007; **27**: 557-566 [PMID: 17558316 DOI: 10.1097/01.iae.0000249390.61854.d5]
55 **Grigorian R**, Bhagat N, Lanzetta P, Tutela A, Zarbin M. Pars plana vitrectomy for refractory diabetic macular edema. *Semin Ophthalmol* 2003; **18**: 116-120 [PMID: 15513471 DOI: 10.1076/soph.18.3.116.29813]
56 **Rosenblatt BJ**, Shah GK, Sharma S, Bakal J. Pars plana vitrectomy with internal limiting membranectomy for refractory diabetic macular edema without a taut posterior hyaloid. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2005; **243**: 20-25 [PMID: 15290152 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-004-0958-z]
57 **DR Clinical Research Network Writing C;** Haller JA, Qin H, Apte RS, Beck RR, Bressler NM, Browning DJ, Danis RP, Glassman AR, Googe JM, Kollman C, Lauer AK, Peters MA, Stockman ME. Vitrectomy outcomes in eyes with diabetic macular edema and vitreomacular traction. *Ophthalmology* 2010; **117**: 1087-1093.e3 [PMID: 20299105 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2009.10.040]
58 **Stefánsson E**. Physiology of vitreous surgery. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2009; **247**: 147-163 [PMID: 19034481 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-008-0980-7]
59 **Doi N**, Sakamoto T, Sonoda Y, Yasuda M, Yonemoto K, Arimura N, Uchino E, Ishibashi T. Comparative study of vitrectomy versus intravitreous triamcinolone for diabetic macular edema on randomized paired-eyes. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2012; **250**: 71-78 [PMID: 21853229 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-011-1777-7]
60 **Hoerauf H**, Brüggemann A, Muecke M, Lüke J, Müller M, Stefánsson E, Hammes HP, Weiss C. Pars plana vitrectomy for diabetic macular edema. Internal limiting membrane delamination vs posterior hyaloid removal. A prospective randomized trial. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2011; **249**: 997-1008 [PMID: 21243370 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-010-1610-8]
61 **Kumar A**, Sinha S, Azad R, Sharma YR, Vohra R. Comparative evaluation of vitrectomy and dye-enhanced ILM peel with grid laser in diffuse diabetic macular edema. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2007; **245**: 360-368 [PMID: 17093998 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-006-0456-6]
62 **Yanyali A**, Horozoglu F, Celik E, Ercalik Y, Nohutcu AF. Pars plana vitrectomy and removal of the internal limiting membrane in diabetic macular edema unresponsive to grid laser photocoagulation. *Eur J Ophthalmol* 2006; **16**: 573-581 [PMID: 16952097]
63 **Patel JI**, Hykin PG, Schadt M, Luong V, Bunce C, Fitzke F, Gregor ZJ. Diabetic macular oedema: pilot randomised trial of pars plana vitrectomy vs macular argon photocoagulation. *Eye* (Lond) 2006; **20**: 873-881 [PMID: 16052254 DOI: 10.1038/sj.eye.6702012]
64 **Stolba U**, Binder S, Gruber D, Krebs I, Aggermann T, Neumaier B. Vitrectomy for persistent diffuse diabetic macular edema. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2005; **140**: 295-301 [PMID: 16023067 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2005.03.045]
65 **Thomas D**, Bunce C, Moorman C, Laidlaw DA. A randomised controlled feasibility trial of vitrectomy versus laser for diabetic macular oedema. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2005; **89**: 81-86 [PMID: 15615752 DOI: 10.1136/bjo.2004.044966]
66 **Simunovic MP**, Hunyor AP, Ho IV. Vitrectomy for diabetic macular edema: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Ophthalmol* 2014; **49**: 188-195 [PMID: 24767227 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcjo.2013.11.012]
67 **Aksoy S**, Yilmaz G, Akkoyun I, Yazici AC. Comparison of intravitreal bevacizumab and triamcinolone acetonide theraphies for diffuse diabetic macular edema. *Int J Ophthalmol* 2015; **8**: 550-555 [PMID: 26086006 DOI: 10.3980/j.issn.2222-3959.2015.03.20]
68 **Keating GM**. Aflibercept: A Review of Its Use in Diabetic Macular Oedema. *Drugs* 2015; **75**: 1153-1160 [PMID: 26056030 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-015-0421-y]
69 **Lim LT**, Chia SN, Ah-Kee EY, Chew N, Gupta M. Advances in the management of diabetic macular oedema based on evidence from the DR Clinical Research Network. *Singapore Med J* 2015; **56**: 237-247 [PMID: 26034315 DOI: 10.11622/smedj.2015071]
70 **Stefanini FR**, Badaró E, Falabella P, Koss M, Farah ME, Maia M. Anti-VEGF for the management of diabetic macular edema. *J Immunol Res* 2014; **2014**: 632307 [PMID: 24741610 DOI: 10.1155/2014/632307]
71 **Ford JA**, Lois N, Royle P, Clar C, Shyangdan D, Waugh N. Current treatments in diabetic macular oedema: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ Open* 2013; **3 pii**: e002269 [PMID: 23457327 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2012-002269]
72 **Stewart MW**. Critical appraisal of ranibizumab in the treatment of diabetic macular edema. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2013; **7**: 1257-1267 [PMID: 23836955 DOI: 10.2147/OPTH.S36443]
73 **Boyer DS**, Hopkins JJ, Sorof J, Ehrlich JS. Anti-vascular endothelial growth factor therapy for diabetic macular edema. *Ther Adv Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **4**: 151-169 [PMID: 24324855 DOI: 10.1177/2042018813512360]
74 **Virgili G**, Parravano M, Menchini F, Evans JR. Anti-vascular endothelial growth factor for diabetic macular oedema. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **10**: CD007419 [PMID: 25342124 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007419.pub4]
75 **Régnier SA**, Malcolm W, Haig J, Xue W. Cost-effectiveness of ranibizumab versus aflibercept in the treatment of visual impairment due to diabetic macular edema: a UK healthcare perspective. *Clinicoecon Outcomes Res* 2015; **7**: 235-247 [PMID: 25999748 DOI: 10.2147/CEOR.S82556]
76 **Wells JA**, Glassman AR, Ayala AR, Jampol LM, Aiello LP, Antoszyk AN, Arnold-Bush B, Baker CW, Bressler NM, Browning DJ, Elman MJ, Ferris FL, Friedman SM, Melia M, Pieramici DJ, Sun JK, Beck RW. Aflibercept, bevacizumab, or ranibizumab for diabetic macular edema. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 1193-1203 [PMID: 25692915 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1414264]
77 **Krispel C**, Rodrigues M, Xin X, Sodhi A. Ranibizumab in diabetic macular edema. *World J Diabetes* 2013; **4**: 310-318 [PMID:

24379922 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v4.i6.310]
78 **Nguyen QD**, Shah SM, Khwaja AA, Channa R, Hatef E, Do DV, Boyer D, Heier JS, Abraham P, Thach AB, Lit ES, Foster BS, Kruger E, Dugel P, Chang T, Das A, Ciulla TA, Pollack JS, Lim JI, Eliott D, Campochiaro PA. Two-year outcomes of the ranibizumab for edema of the mAcula in diabetes (READ-2) study. *Ophthalmology* 2010; **117**: 2146-2151 [PMID: 20855114 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2010.08.016]
79 **Domalpally A**, Ip MS, Ehrlich JS. Effects of intravitreal ranibizumab on retinal hard exudate in diabetic macular edema: findings from the RIDE and RISE phase III clinical trials. *Ophthalmology* 2015; **122**: 779-786 [PMID: 25601535 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.10.028]
80 **Bressler NM**, Varma R, Suñer IJ, Dolan CM, Ward J, Ehrlich JS, Colman S, Turpcu A. Vision-related function after ranibizumab treatment for diabetic macular edema: results from RIDE and RISE. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 2461-2472 [PMID: 25148789 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.07.008]
81 **Brown DM**, Nguyen QD, Marcus DM, Boyer DS, Patel S, Feiner L, Schlottmann PG, Rundle AC, Zhang J, Rubio RG, Adamis AP, Ehrlich JS, Hopkins JJ. Long-term outcomes of ranibizumab therapy for diabetic macular edema: the 36-month results from two phase III trials: RISE and RIDE. *Ophthalmology* 2013; **120**: 2013-2022 [PMID: 23706949 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2013.02.034]
82 **Nguyen QD**, Brown DM, Marcus DM, Boyer DS, Patel S, Feiner L, Gibson A, Sy J, Rundle AC, Hopkins JJ, Rubio RG, Ehrlich JS. Ranibizumab for diabetic macular edema: results from 2 phase III randomized trials: RISE and RIDE. *Ophthalmology* 2012; **119**: 789-801 [PMID: 22330964 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2011.12.039]
83 **Liu XD**, Zhou XD, Wang Z, Shen HJ. Comparison of intravitreal bevacizumab with macular photocoagulation for treatment of diabetic macular edema: a systemic review and Meta-analysis. *Int J Ophthalmol* 2014; **7**: 1048-1055 [PMID: 25540764 DOI: 10.3980/j.issn.2222-3959.2014.06.26]
84 **Poku E**, Rathbone J, Wong R, Everson-Hock E, Essat M, Pandor A, Wailoo A. The safety of intravitreal bevacizumab monotherapy in adult ophthalmic conditions: systematic review. *BMJ Open* 2014; **4**: e005244 [PMID: 25034629 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2014-005244]
85 **Jin ZY**, Zhu D, Tao Y, Wong IY, Jonas JB. Meta-analysis of the effect of intravitreal bevacizumab versus intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide in central retinal vein occlusion. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **29**: 826-831 [PMID: 23971622 DOI: 10.1089/jop.2013.0061]
86 **Rajendram R**, Fraser-Bell S, Kaines A, Michaelides M, Hamilton RD, Esposti SD, Peto T, Egan C, Bunce C, Leslie RD, Hykin PG. A 2-year prospective randomized controlled trial of intravitreal bevacizumab or laser therapy (BOLT) in the management of diabetic macular edema: 24-month data: report 3. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2012; **130**: 972-979 [PMID: 22491395 DOI: 10.1001/archophthalmol.2012.393]
87 **Soheilian M**, Garfami KH, Ramezani A, Yaseri M, Peyman GA. Two-year results of a randomized trial of intravitreal bevacizumab alone or combined with triamcinolone versus laser in diabetic macular edema. *Retina* 2012; **32**: 314-321 [PMID: 22234244 DOI: 10.1097/IAE.0b013e31822f55de]
88 **Soheilian M**, Ramezani A, Obudi A, Bijanzadeh B, Salehipour M, Yaseri M, Ahmadieh H, Dehghan MH, Azarmina M, Moradian S, Peyman GA. Randomized trial of intravitreal bevacizumab alone or combined with triamcinolone versus macular photocoagulation in diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2009; **116**: 1142-1150 [PMID: 19376585 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2009.01.011]
89 **Soheilian M**, Ramezani A, Bijanzadeh B, Yaseri M, Ahmadieh H, Dehghan MH, Azarmina M, Moradian S, Tabatabaei H, Peyman GA. Intravitreal bevacizumab (avastin) injection alone or combined with triamcinolone versus macular photocoagulation as primary treatment of diabetic macular edema. *Retina* 2007; **27**: 1187-1195 [PMID: 18046223 DOI: 10.1097/IAE.0b013e31815ec261]
90 **Liu X**, Zhou X, Wang Z, Li T, Jiang B. Intravitreal bevacizumab with or without triamcinolone acetonide for diabetic macular edema: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2014; **127**: 3471-3476 [PMID: 25269916]
91 **Korobelnik JF**, Do DV, Schmidt-Erfurth U, Boyer DS, Holz FG, Heier JS, Midena E, Kaiser PK, Terasaki H, Marcus DM, Nguyen QD, Jaffe GJ, Slakter JS, Simader C, Soo Y, Schmelter T, Yancopoulos GD, Stahl N, Vitti R, Berliner AJ, Zeitz O, Metzig C, Brown DM. Intravitreal aflibercept for diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 2247-2254 [PMID: 25012934 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.05.006]
92 **EYLEA Home**. Available from: URL: http: //www.eylea.us
93 **Papadopoulos N**, Martin J, Ruan Q, Rafique A, Rosconi MP, Shi E, Pyles EA, Yancopoulos GD, Stahl N, Wiegand SJ. Binding and neutralization of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and related ligands by VEGF Trap, ranibizumab and bevacizumab. *Angiogenesis* 2012; **15**: 171-185 [PMID: 22302382 DOI: 10.1007/s10456-011-9249-6]
94 **Do DV**, Nguyen QD, Boyer D, Schmidt-Erfurth U, Brown DM, Vitti R, Berliner AJ, Gao B, Zeitz O, Ruckert R, Schmelter T, Sandbrink R, Heier JS. One-year outcomes of the da Vinci Study of VEGF Trap-Eye in eyes with diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2012; **119**: 1658-1665 [PMID: 22537617 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2012.02.010]
95 **Campochiaro PA**, Clark WL, Boyer DS, Heier JS, Brown DM, Vitti R, Kazmi H, Berliner AJ, Erickson K, Chu KW, Soo Y, Cheng Y, Haller JA. Intravitreal aflibercept for macular edema following branch retinal vein occlusion: the 24-week results of the VIBRANT study. *Ophthalmology* 2015; **122**: 538-544 [PMID: 25315663 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.08.031]
96 **Korobelnik JF**, Holz FG, Roider J, Ogura Y, Simader C, Schmidt-Erfurth U, Lorenz K, Honda M, Vitti R, Berliner AJ, Hiemeyer F, Stemper B, Zeitz O, Sandbrink R. Intravitreal Aflibercept Injection for Macular Edema Resulting from Central Retinal Vein Occlusion: One-Year Results of the Phase 3 GALILEO Study. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 202-208 [PMID: 24084497 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2013.08.012]
97 **Evoy KE**, Abel SR. Aflibercept: newly approved for the treatment of macular edema following central retinal vein occlusion. *Ann Pharmacother* 2013; **47**: 819-827 [PMID: 23673531 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1R705]
98 **Brown DM**, Heier JS, Clark WL, Boyer DS, Vitti R, Berliner AJ, Zeitz O, Sandbrink R, Zhu X, Haller JA. Intravitreal aflibercept injection for macular edema secondary to central retinal vein occlusion: 1-year results from the phase 3 COPERNICUS study. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2013; **155**: 429-437.e7 [PMID: 23218699 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2012.09.026]
99 **Kourlas H**, Schiller DS. Pegaptanib sodium for the treatment of neovascular age-related macular degeneration: a review. *Clin Ther* 2006; **28**: 36-44 [PMID: 16490578 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2006.01.009]
100 **Ishibashi T**, Yuzawa M, Yoshimura N, Ohji M, Ishida S, Isogawa N, Esaka E. [Japan phase 3 study of pegaptanib sodium in patients with diabetic macular edema]. *Nippon Ganka Gakkai Zasshi* 2014; **118**: 773-782 [PMID: 25318186]
101 **Sivaprasad S**, Browning RC, Starita C. An open-label, one-year, noncomparative study to evaluate the safety and tolerability of intravitreal pegaptanib sodium in patients with diabetic macular edema. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2014; **8**: 1565-1571 [PMID: 25187694 DOI: 10.2147/OPTH.S68498]
102 **Sultan MB**, Zhou D, Loftus J, Dombi T, Ice KS. A phase 2/3, multicenter, randomized, double-masked, 2-year trial of pegaptanib sodium for the treatment of diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2011; **118**: 1107-1118 [PMID: 21529957 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2011.02.045]
103 **Wroblewski JJ**, Wells JA, Gonzales CR. Pegaptanib sodium for macular edema secondary to branch retinal vein occlusion. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2010; **149**: 147-154 [PMID: 19875087 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2009.08.005]
104 **Querques G**, Bux AV, Martinelli D, Iaculli C, Noci ND. Intravitreal pegaptanib sodium (Macugen) for diabetic macular oedema. *Acta Ophthalmol* 2009; **87**: 623-630 [PMID: 19678810 DOI: 10.1111/j.1755-3768.2009.01580.x]

105 **Cholkar K**, Gunda S, Earla R, Pal D, Mitra AK. Nanomicellar Topical Aqueous Drop Formulation of Rapamycin for Back-of-the-Eye Delivery. *AAPS PharmSciTech* 2015; **16**: 610-622 [PMID: 25425389 DOI: 10.1208/s12249-014-0244-2]

106 **Frost P**, Berlanger E, Mysore V, Hoang B, Shi Y, Gera J, Lichtenstein A. Mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitors induce tumor cell apoptosis in vivo primarily by inhibiting VEGF expression and angiogenesis. *J Oncol* 2013; **2013**: 897025 [PMID: 23533410 DOI: 10.1155/2013/897025]

107 **Stahl A**, Paschek L, Martin G, Gross NJ, Feltgen N, Hansen LL, Agostini HT. Rapamycin reduces VEGF expression in retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) and inhibits RPE-induced sprouting angiogenesis in vitro. *FEBS Lett* 2008; **582**: 3097-3102 [PMID: 18703055 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2008.08.005]

108 **Xue Q**, Nagy JA, Manseau EJ, Phung TL, Dvorak HF, Benjamin LE. Rapamycin inhibition of the Akt/mTOR pathway blocks select stages of VEGF-A164-driven angiogenesis, in part by blocking S6Kinase. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2009; **29**: 1172-1178 [PMID: 19443844 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.109.185918]

109 **National Eye Institute (NEI)**. Palomid 529 in Patients With Neovascular Age-Related Macular Degeneration. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01271270?term=NCT01271270&rank=1 NLM Identifier: NCT01271270

110 **Nguyen QD**, Ibrahim MA, Watters A, Bittencourt M, Yohannan J, Sepah YJ, Dunn JP, Naor J, Shams N, Shaikh O, Leder HA, Do DV. Ocular tolerability and efficacy of intravitreal and subconjunctival injections of sirolimus in patients with non-infectious uveitis: primary 6-month results of the SAVE Study. *J Ophthalmic Inflamm Infect* 2013; **3**: 32 [PMID: 23514595 DOI: 10.1186/1869-5760-3-32]

111 **Dugel PU**, Blumenkranz MS, Haller JA, Williams GA, Solley WA, Kleinman DM, Naor J. A randomized, dose-escalation study of subconjunctival and intravitreal injections of sirolimus in patients with diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2012; **119**: 124-131 [PMID: 22115710 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2011.07.034]

112 **Krishnadev N**, Forooghian F, Cukras C, Wong W, Saligan L, Chew EY, Nussenblatt R, Ferris F, Meyerle C. Subconjunctival sirolimus in the treatment of diabetic macular edema. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol* 2011; **249**: 1627-1633 [PMID: 21567211 DOI: 10.1007/s00417-011-1694-9]

113 **Bandello F**, Casalino G, Loewenstein A, Goldstein M, Pelayes D, Battaglia Parodi M. Pharmacological approach to diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmic Res* 2014; **51**: 88-95 [PMID: 24356667 DOI: 10.1159/000356693]

114 **Stewart MW**. Corticosteroid use for diabetic macular edema: old fad or new trend? *Curr Diab Rep* 2012; **12**: 364-375 [PMID: 22581206 DOI: 10.1007/s11892-012-0281-8]

115 **Wolfensberger TJ**, Gregor ZJ. Macular edema--rationale for therapy. *Dev Ophthalmol* 2010; **47**: 49-58 [PMID: 20703043 DOI: 10.1159/000320073]

116 **Edelman JL**, Lutz D, Castro MR. Corticosteroids inhibit VEGF-induced vascular leakage in a rabbit model of blood-retinal and blood-aqueous barrier breakdown. *Exp Eye Res* 2005; **80**: 249-258 [PMID: 15670803 DOI: 10.1016/j.exer.2004.09.013]

117 **Nauck M**, Roth M, Tamm M, Eickelberg O, Wieland H, Stulz P, Perruchoud AP. Induction of vascular endothelial growth factor by platelet-activating factor and platelet-derived growth factor is downregulated by corticosteroids. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 1997; **16**: 398-406 [PMID: 9115750 DOI: 10.1165/ajrcmb.16.4.9115750]

118 **Das A**, McGuire PG, Rangasamy S. Diabetic Macular Edema: Pathophysiology and Novel Therapeutic Targets. *Ophthalmology* 2015; **122**: 1375-1394 [PMID: 25935789 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2015.03.024]

119 **Veritti D**, Di Giulio A, Sarao V, Lanzetta P. Drug safety evaluation of intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide. *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2012; **11**: 331-340 [PMID: 22066820 DOI: 10.1517/14740338.2012.635141]

120 **Sears JE**, Hoppe G. Triamcinolone acetonide destabilizes VEGF mRNA in Müller cells under continuous cobalt stimulation. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2005; **46**: 4336-4341 [PMID: 16249516 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.05-0565]

121 **Tao Y**, Jonas JB. Intravitreal triamcinolone. *Ophthalmologica* 2011; **225**: 1-20 [PMID: 20693817 DOI: 10.1159/000317909]

122 **Jonas JB**. Intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide for DR. *Dev Ophthalmol* 2007; **39**: 96-110 [PMID: 17245081 DOI: 10.1159/000098502]

123 **Jonas JB**. Intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide: a change in a paradigm. *Ophthalmic Res* 2006; **38**: 218-245 [PMID: 16763379 DOI: 10.1159/000093796]

124 **Jonas JB**, Kreissig I, Kamppeter B, Degenring RF. [Intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide for the treatment of intraocular edematous and neovascular diseases]. *Ophthalmologe* 2004; **101**: 113-120 [PMID: 14991306 DOI: 10.1007/s00347-003-0982-0]

125 **Yumusak E**, Buyuktortop N, Ornek K. Early results of dexamethasone implant, ranibizumab, and triamcinolone in macular edema due to branch retinal vein occlusion. *Eur J Ophthalmol* 2015; **26**: 54-59 [PMID: 26109021 DOI: 10.5301/ejo.5000637]

126 **Bucolo C**, Grosso G, Drago V, Gagliano C. Intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide in the treatment of ophthalmic inflammatory diseases with macular edema: a meta-analysis study. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **31**: 228-240 [PMID: 25825799 DOI: 10.1089/jop.2014.0094]

127 **DR Clinical Research N;** Beck RW, Edwards AR, Aiello LP, Bressler NM, Ferris F, Glassman AR, Hartnett E, Ip MS, Kim JE, Kollman C. Three-year follow-up of a randomized trial comparing focal/grid photocoagulation and intravitreal triamcinolone for diabetic macular edema. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2009; **127**: 245-251 [PMID: 19273785 DOI: 10.1001/archophthalmol.2008.610]

128 **DR Clinical Research Network**. A randomized trial comparing intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide and focal/grid photocoagulation for diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2008; **115**: 1447-1449, 1449.e1-e10 [PMID: 18662829 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2008.06.015]

129 **Yoo SG**, Kim JH, Lee TG, Kim CG, Kim JW. Short-term efficacy of intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide for macular edema secondary to retinal vein occlusion that is refractory to intravitreal bevacizumab. *Indian J Ophthalmol* 2015; **63**: 25-29 [PMID: 25686058 DOI: 10.4103/0301-4738.151460]

130 **Thompson JT**. Cataract formation and other complications of intravitreal triamcinolone for macular edema. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2006; **141**: 629-637 [PMID: 16564796 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2005.11.050]

131 **Gillies MC**, Kuzniarz M, Craig J, Ball M, Luo W, Simpson JM. Intravitreal triamcinolone-induced elevated intraocular pressure is associated with the development of posterior subcapsular cataract. *Ophthalmology* 2005; **112**: 139-143 [PMID: 15629834 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2004.07.017]

132 **Moshfeghi DM**, Kaiser PK, Bakri SJ, Kaiser RS, Maturi RK, Sears JE, Scott IU, Belmont J, Beer PM, Quiroz-Mercado H, Mieler WF. Presumed sterile endophthalmitis following intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide injection. *Ophthalmic Surg Lasers Imaging* 2005; **36**: 24-29 [PMID: 15688968]

133 **Bhavsar AR**, Ip MS, Glassman AR. The risk of endophthalmitis following intravitreal triamcinolone injection in the DRCRnet and SCORE clinical trials. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2007; **144**: 454-456 [PMID: 17765429 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajo.2007.04.011]

134 **Dodwell DG**, Krimmel DA, de Fiebre CM. Sterile endophthalmitis rates and particle size analyses of different formulations of triamcinolone acetonide. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2015; **9**: 1033-1040 [PMID: 26089635 DOI: 10.2147/OPTH.S82562]

135 **Cholkar K**, Hariharan S, Gunda S, Mitra AK. Optimization of dexamethasone mixed nanomicellar formulation. *AAPS PharmSciTech* 2014; **15**: 1454-1467 [PMID: 24980081 DOI: 10.1208/s12249-014-0159-y]

136 **Earla R**, Boddu SH, Cholkar K, Hariharan S, Jwala J, Mitra AK. Development and validation of a fast and sensitive bioanalytical method for the quantitative determination of glucocorticoids--quantitative measurement of dexamethasone in rabbit ocular

matrices by liquid chromatography tandem mass spectrometry. *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 2010; **52**: 525-533 [PMID: 20172680 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpba.2010.01.015]

137 **Campochiaro PA**, Brown DM, Pearson A, Chen S, Boyer D, Ruiz-Moreno J, Garretson B, Gupta A, Hariprasad SM, Bailey C, Reichel E, Soubrane G, Kapik B, Billman K, Kane FE, Green K. Sustained delivery fluocinolone acetonide vitreous inserts provide benefit for at least 3 years in patients with diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2012; **119**: 2125-2132 [PMID: 22727177 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2012.04.030]

138 **Pearson PA**, Comstock TL, Ip M, Callanan D, Morse LS, Ashton P, Levy B, Mann ES, Eliott D. Fluocinolone acetonide intravitreal implant for diabetic macular edema: a 3-year multicenter, randomized, controlled clinical trial. *Ophthalmology* 2011; **118**: 1580-1587 [PMID: 21813090 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2011.02.048]

139 **Boyer DS**, Faber D, Gupta S, Patel SS, Tabandeh H, Li XY, Liu CC, Lou J, Whitcup SM. Dexamethasone intravitreal implant for treatment of diabetic macular edema in vitrectomized patients. *Retina* 2011; **31**: 915-923 [PMID: 21487341 DOI: 10.1097/IAE.0b013e318206d18c]

140 **Chang-Lin JE**, Attar M, Acheampong AA, Robinson MR, Whitcup SM, Kuppermann BD, Welty D. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a sustained-release dexamethasone intravitreal implant. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2011; **52**: 80-86 [PMID: 20702826 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.10-5285]

141 **Haller JA**, Kuppermann BD, Blumenkranz MS, Williams GA, Weinberg DV, Chou C, Whitcup SM. Randomized controlled trial of an intravitreous dexamethasone drug delivery system in patients with diabetic macular edema. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2010; **128**: 289-296 [PMID: 20212197 DOI: 10.1001/archophthalmol.2010.21]

142 **Campochiaro PA**, Hafiz G, Shah SM, Bloom S, Brown DM, Busquets M, Ciulla T, Feiner L, Sabates N, Billman K, Kapik B, Green K, Kane F. Sustained ocular delivery of fluocinolone acetonide by an intravitreal insert. *Ophthalmology* 2010; **117**: 1393-1399.e3 [PMID: 20202684 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2009.11.024]

143 **Gillies MC**, Sutter FK, Simpson JM, Larsson J, Ali H, Zhu M. Intravitreal triamcinolone for refractory diabetic macular edema: two-year results of a double-masked, placebo-controlled, randomized clinical trial. *Ophthalmology* 2006; **113**: 1533-1538 [PMID: 16828501 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2006.02.065]

144 **Michaelides M**, Kaines A, Hamilton RD, Fraser-Bell S, Rajendram R, Quhill F, Boos CJ, Xing W, Egan C, Peto T, Bunce C, Leslie RD, Hykin PG. A prospective randomized trial of intravitreal bevacizumab or laser therapy in the management of diabetic macular edema (BOLT study) 12-month data: report 2. *Ophthalmology* 2010; **117**: 1078-1086.e2 [PMID: 20416952 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2010.03.045]

145 **Nguyen QD**, Shah SM, Heier JS, Do DV, Lim J, Boyer D, Abraham P, Campochiaro PA. Primary End Point (Six Months) Results of the Ranibizumab for Edema of the mAcula in diabetes (READ-2) study. *Ophthalmology* 2009; **116**: 2175-2181.e1 [PMID: 19700194 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2009.04.023]

146 **Régnier S**, Malcolm W, Allen F, Wright J, Bezlyak V. Efficacy of anti-VEGF and laser photocoagulation in the treatment of visual impairment due to diabetic macular edema: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e102309 [PMID: 25029255 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0102309]

147 **Kim JH**, Kang SW, Ha HS, Kim JR. Vitrectomy combined with intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide injection and macular laser photocoagulation for nontractional diabetic macular edema. *Korean J Ophthalmol* 2013; **27**: 186-193 [PMID: 23730111 DOI: 10.3341/kjo.2013.27.3.186]

148 **Patel SP**, Vaishya R, Yang X, Pal D, Mitra AK. Novel thermo-sensitive pentablock copolymers for sustained delivery of proteins in the treatment of posterior segment diseases. *Protein Pept Lett* 2014; **21**: 1185-1200 [PMID: 25315374]

149 **Sampat KM**, Garg SJ. Complications of intravitreal injections. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2010; **21**: 178-183 [PMID: 20375895 DOI: 10.1097/ICU.0b013e328338679a]

150 **Bertelmann T**, Schulze S. Long-Term Follow-Up of Patient with Diabetic Macular Edema Receiving Fluocinolone Acetonide Intravitreal Implant. *Ophthalmol Ther* 2015; **4**: 51-58 [PMID: 25672501 DOI: 10.1007/s40123-015-0028-0]

151 **Cunha-Vaz J**, Ashton P, Iezzi R, Campochiaro P, Dugel PU, Holz FG, Weber M, Danis RP, Kuppermann BD, Bailey C, Billman K, Kapik B, Kane F, Green K. Sustained delivery fluocinolone acetonide vitreous implants: long-term benefit in patients with chronic diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 1892-1903 [PMID: 24935282 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.04.019]

152 **Adelman R**, Parnes A, Michalewska Z, Parolini B, Boscher C, Ducournau D. Strategy for the management of diabetic macular edema: the European vitreo-retinal society macular edema study. *Biomed Res Int* 2015; **2015**: 352487 [PMID: 25695062 DOI: 10.1155/2015/352487]

153 **Misra GP**, Singh RS, Aleman TS, Jacobson SG, Gardner TW, Lowe TL. Subconjunctivally implantable hydrogels with degradable and thermoresponsive properties for sustained release of insulin to the retina. *Biomaterials* 2009; **30**: 6541-6547 [PMID: 19709741 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2009.08.025]

154 **Arevalo JF**. Diabetic macular edema: Current management 2013. *World J Diabetes* 2013; **4**: 231-233 [PMID: 24379911 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v4.i6.231]

155 **Diaz-Llopis M**, Udaondo P, Millán JM, Arevalo JF. Enzymatic vitrectomy for DR and diabetic macular edema. *World J Diabetes* 2013; **4**: 319-323 [PMID: 24379923 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v4.i6.319]

156 **Zucchiatti I**, Lattanzio R, Querques G, Querques L, Del Turco C, Cascavilla ML, Bandello F. Intravitreal dexamethasone implant in patients with persistent diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmologica* 2012; **228**: 117-122 [PMID: 22310491 DOI: 10.1159/000336225]

157 **Gillies MC**, Lim LL, Campain A, Quin GJ, Salem W, Li J, Goodwin S, Aroney C, McAllister IL, Fraser-Bell S. A randomized clinical trial of intravitreal bevacizumab versus intravitreal dexamethasone for diabetic macular edema: the BEVORDEX study. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 2473-2481 [PMID: 25155371 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.07.002]

158 **Cholkar K,** Gilger BC, Mitra AK. Topical, Aqueous, Clear Cyclosporine Formulation Design for Anterior and Posterior Ocular Delivery. *Transl Vis Sci Technol* 2015; **4**: 1 [PMID: 25964868 DOI: 10.1167/tvst.4.3.1]

159 **Fujisawa T**, Miyai H, Hironaka K, Tsukamoto T, Tahara K, Tozuka Y, Ito M, Takeuchi H. Liposomal diclofenac eye drop formulations targeting the retina: formulation stability improvement using surface modification of liposomes. *Int J Pharm* 2012; **436**: 564-567 [PMID: 22828072 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2012.07.024]

160 **Feng L**, Li SK, Liu H, Liu CY, LaSance K, Haque F, Shu D, Guo P. Ocular delivery of pRNA nanoparticles: distribution and clearance after subconjunctival injection. *Pharm Res* 2014; **31**: 1046-1058 [PMID: 24297069 DOI: 10.1007/s11095-013-1226-x]

161 **Conley SM**, Naash MI. Nanoparticles for retinal gene therapy. *Prog Retin Eye Res* 2010; **29**: 376-397 [PMID: 20452457 DOI: 10.1016/j.preteyeres.2010.04.004]

162 **Ding XQ**, Quiambao AB, Fitzgerald JB, Cooper MJ, Conley SM, Naash MI. Ocular delivery of compacted DNA-nanoparticles does not elicit toxicity in the mouse retina. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e7410 [PMID: 19823583 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0007410]

163 **Mitra RN**, Han Z, Merwin M, Al Taai M, Conley SM, Naash MI. Synthesis and characterization of glycol chitosan DNA nanoparticles for retinal gene delivery. *ChemMedChem* 2014; **9**: 189-196 [PMID: 24203490 DOI: 10.1002/cmdc.201300371]

164 **Panda JJ**, Yandrapu S, Kadam RS, Chauhan VS, Kompella UB. Self-assembled phenylalanine-α,β-dehydrophenylalanine nanotubes for sustained intravitreal delivery of a multi-targeted tyrosine kinase inhibitor. *J Control Release* 2013; **172**: 1151-1160 [PMID: 24075925 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2013.09.016]

165 **Boddu SH**, Jwala J, Vaishya R, Earla R, Karla PK, Pal D, Mitra AK. Novel nanoparticulate gel formulations of steroids for the treatment of macular edema. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **26**: 37-48 [PMID: 20148659 DOI: 10.1089/jop.2009.0074]

166 **Yandrapu SK**, Upadhyay AK, Petrash JM, Kompella UB. Nanoparticles in porous microparticles prepared by supercritical

infusion and pressure quench technology for sustained delivery of bevacizumab. *Mol Pharm* 2013; **10**: 4676-4686 [PMID: 24131101 DOI: 10.1021/mp400487f]

167 **Patel SP**, Vaishya R, Mishra GP, Tamboli V, Pal D, Mitra AK. Tailor-made pentablock copolymer based formulation for sustained ocular delivery of protein therapeutics. *J Drug Deliv* 2014; **2014**: 401747 [PMID: 25045540 DOI: 10.1155/2014/401747]

168 **Boyer DS**, Yoon YH, Belfort R, Bandello F, Maturi RK, Augustin AJ, Li XY, Cui H, Hashad Y, Whitcup SM. Three-year, randomized, sham-controlled trial of dexamethasone intravitreal implant in patients with diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2014; **121**: 1904-1914 [PMID: 24907062 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2014.04.024]

169 **Campochiaro PA**, Brown DM, Pearson A, Ciulla T, Boyer D, Holz FG, Tolentino M, Gupta A, Duarte L, Madreperla S, Gonder J, Kapik B, Billman K, Kane FE. Long-term benefit of sustained-delivery fluocinolone acetonide vitreous inserts for diabetic macular edema. *Ophthalmology* 2011; **118**: 626-635.e2 [PMID: 21459216 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2010.12.028]

P- Reviewer: Charoenphandhu N, Masaki T
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Li D

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.15

World J Pharmacol 2016 March 9; 5(1): 15-31
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

REVIEW

Non-selective beta-blockers in cirrhosis: Current concepts and controversies

Neil Rajoriya, Dhiraj Tripathi

Neil Rajoriya, Dhiraj Tripathi, Department of Hepatology, the New Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Birmingham B15 2TH, United Kingdom

Author contributions: All the authors contributed equally to this manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Correspondence to: Dr. Dhiraj Tripathi, Consultant Hepatologist, Honorary Senior Lecturer, Department of Hepatology, the New Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Edgbaston, Queen Elizabeth Medical Centre, Birmingham B15 2TH, United Kingdom. dhiraj.tripathi@uhb.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-121-3714672
Fax: +44-121-6272449

Received: August 28, 2015
Peer-review started: September 1, 2015
First decision: November 24, 2015
Revised: December 11, 2015
Accepted: January 5, 2016
Article in press: January 7, 2016
Published online: March 9, 2016

Abstract

Non-selective beta-blockers (NSBBs) have been at the forefront in the management of portal hypertension in liver cirrhosis for the last three decades, a trusty component in the armamentarium of the Hepatologist. The role of beta-blockers has been cemented for years in cardiac disease including angina, hypertension and in heart failure, however NSBBs with their non-selective effects on β1 and β2 receptors have led to them fondly being termed "the hepatologist's aspirin". NSBBs' role in reduction of portal pressure in the setting of primary and secondary prophylaxis for variceal haemorrhage has been well established. NSBBs include propranolol, nadolol and carvedilol - with the latter having been shown to be effective in patients who often fail to demonstrate a haemodynamic response to propranolol. Recent observational studies however have served for the Hepatology community to question the beneficial role of NSBBs in portal hypertension, especially in advanced cases with refractory ascites. The deleterious effect in patients with refractory ascites in a few studies led to a U-turn in clinical practice, with some in the Hepatology community withdrawing their usage in patients with advanced cirrhosis. This also led to the "window hypothesis" suggesting there may be only be a finite time frame when NSBBs have a beneficial effect in portal hypertension. The window hypothesis proposed the window for the benefits of NSBBs is closed in early portal hypertension, opening as portal hypertension progresses with it closing in advanced liver disease. The window was proposed to close in conditions such as refractory ascites or spontaneous bacterial peritonitis when patients may not necessarily mount a compensatory haemodynamic response when on NSBBs. Some centres however have continued the practice of NSBBs in advanced cirrhosis with published data challenging the scepticisms of other groups who stop NSBBs. Thus the debate, like the window hypothesis has opened, with more questions to be answered about NSBB's mechanism of action not only in reducing portal hypertension but also their effects on systemic haemodynamics and on the pro-inflammatory pathways often activated in cirrhosis especially in advanced disease. This article serves to review the role of NSBBs in the management of portal hypertension/cirrhosis and concentrate on current concepts and controversies in this field.

Key words: Variceal haemorrhage; Non-selective beta-

blockers; Portal hypertension; Liver cirrhosis

Core tip: This article serves to discuss the changing role of non-selective beta-blockers in liver disease and portal hypertension. For many years non-selective beta-blockers have been at the forefront in reducing portal hypertensive complications such as variceal haemorrhage, however recent data has questioned their role in advanced liver disease. This article reviews their role in portal hypertension, discusses recent advances in the field and reviews the controversy recently generated regarding their role in advanced liver disease.

Rajoriya N, Tripathi D. Non-selective beta-blockers in cirrhosis: Current concepts and controversies. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(1): 15-31 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i1/15.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.15

INTRODUCTION

Liver cirrhosis is a major cause of morbidity and mortality throughout the world[1,2], with the advent of portal hypertension one of the key defining steps leading to the complications that can develop in advanced liver disease. The role of non-selective beta-receptor antagonists [non-selective beta-blockers (NSBBs)] has been well established over the years in the Hepatologist's armamentarium against portal hypertension and its consequences. NSBBs have been used routinely in practice with beneficial roles in primary and secondary prophylaxis in patients with medium to large oesophageal varices[3-5]. The development of portal hypertension is the key defining step leading to complications that can occur in patients with liver cirrhosis irrespective of aetiology. Consequences can include variceal haemorrhage, ascites formation [and thereafter a risk of the development of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP)] and hepatic encephalopathy. Portal hypertension develops from a combination of a rise in the intrahepatic resistance but also from splanchnic vasodilatation and the hyperdynamic circulation that occurs in cirrhosis. It has been shown that rupture of varices is related to tension on the variceal wall, with the tension dependent on the radius[6]. There has been no linear relationship found between the severity of portal hypertension and the risk of variceal haemorrhage however a hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) > 12 mmHg has become an accepted threshold for variceal bleeding[7,8]. As liver disease progresses and portal hypertension worsens, ascites can form, bacterial translocation from the gut occurs and patients can become prone to complications such as infection that can in turn lead to increases in portal pressure and thus variceal haemorrhage. Thus reduction of portal pressure is key in preventing complications of cirrhosis including reduction of ascites, hepatic encephalopathy and variceal haemorrhage[9-11]. Whilst portal hypertension can be reduced by radiological methods such as transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts (TIPSS), NSBBs have been the key pharmacological therapy in reduction of portal pressure over the years. The role of selective beta-blockers in cardiac disease has been cemented for years, including in acute coronary syndrome[12], hypertension[13] and congestive cardiac failure[14]. NSBBs used in liver disease however act by dual blockage of β1 and β2 receptors unlike their cardio-selective counterparts. NSBBs reduce cardiac output (CO) and splanchnic blood flow *via* blockade of the β1 receptor, and by blocking β2 result in a splanchnic vasoconstriction *via* unopposed α1 activity[15]. NSBBs have been used to decrease the incidence of 1st variceal haemorrhage in patients with cirrhosis (*i.e.,* primary prophylaxis)[3-5] and then to prevent rebleeding after a variceal haemorrhage (*i.e.,* secondary prophylaxis)[16-18]. Propranolol has been the mainstay of NSBBs used in chronic liver disease for years, however more recently carvedilol, with its intrinsic α1-adrenergic activity has been studied and found to be useful even in settings where patients have failed to demonstrate an appropriate haemodynamic response to propranolol[19] thus providing an additional or alternative therapy for reduction of portal pressure.

There has however been a recent concern about the role of NSBBs in advanced liver disease and especially in patients with refractory ascites, with one group raising concerns showing an increase in mortality in this setting[20]. This issue led to the "window" hypothesis, suggesting that there may be a finite time frame when NSBBs have a favourable effect in chronic liver disease, with their effects becoming deleterious and the window closing in advanced disease states[21]. However, recent data from our own centre has argued against this, with beneficial findings of NSBBs in patients with ascites on a liver transplant waiting list even in those patients with refractory ascites[22]. Furthermore, favourable data on the role of NSBBs in alcoholic hepatitis[23] and acute on chronic liver failure (ACLF) has recently emerged[24]. Thus, there still remains controversy of how safe and effective are NSBBs in advanced cirrhosis, with further studies required to address this debate.

A PubMed search was performed using the following keywords: "non-selective beta-blockers" and "variceal haemorrhage cirrhosis". From this search 2965 articles were found. This search was complemented by a search of the keywords using www.google.com™. One hundred and eighteen papers/abstracts were studied for the preparation and writing of this review article. This review article serves to explore the role of NSBB in portal hypertension and liver cirrhosis, to review their mechanism of action and to review the favourable and negative data pertaining to their roles in liver disease. The article will review the recent controversies with NSBB in advanced liver disease, and proposes some thoughts on future directions of NSBB usage and studies potentially required to answer the question if NSBBs can remain as the Hepatologist's aspirin?

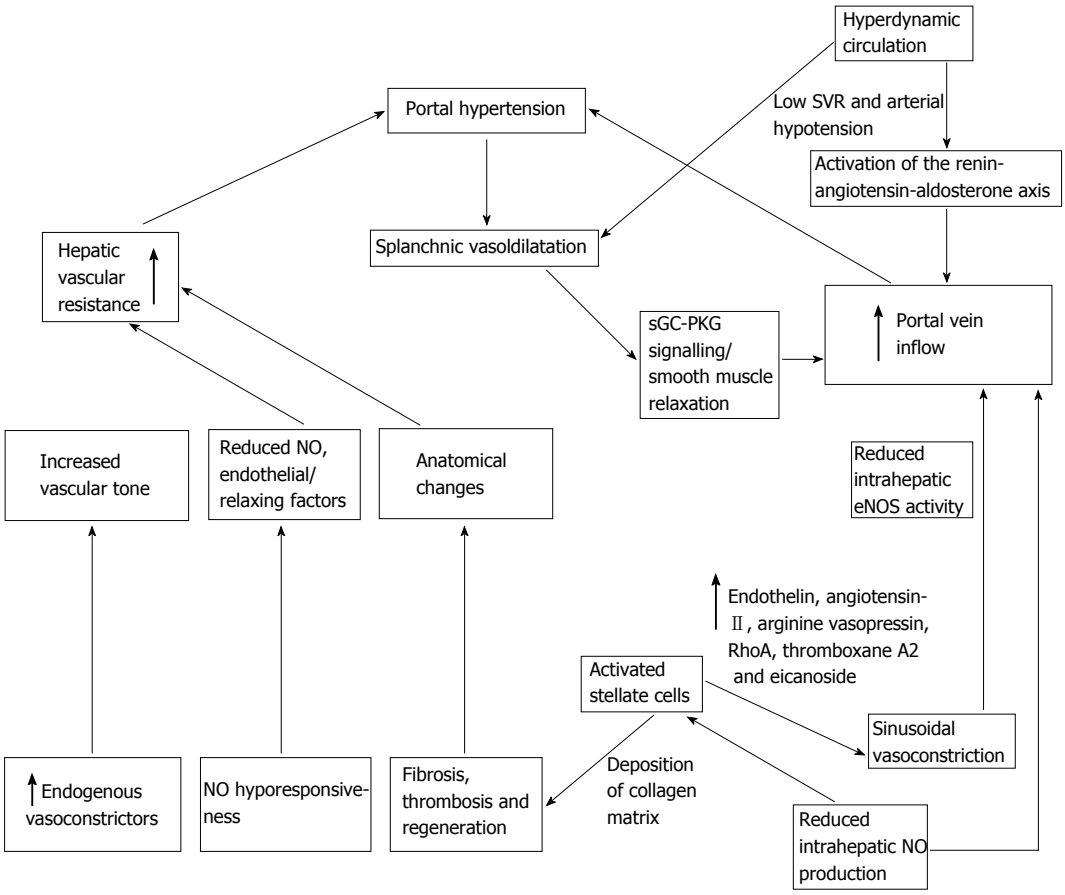


Figure 1 Factors involved in the pathogenesis of portal hypertension. A mechanical obstruction due to fibrosis or regenerative nodules results increased resistance to flow and a rise in hepatic vascular resistance. Contraction of sinusoidal and extra sinusoidal contractile cells (stellate cells) with intrahepatic imbalance between vasoconstrictors (such as endothelin-1 and angiotensin) and vasodilators (*e.g.*, NO) leads to reduced intrahepatic eNOS activity leading to an increase resistance to portal inflow. Portosystemic collaterals develop with the aim of decompressing the portal circulation. However, the opposite occurs, with splanchnic vasodilatation in response to a relatively ischaemic liver or extrahepatic excess of NO, with sGC-PKG signalling and smooth muscle cell relaxation. The increased portal blood flow maintains portal hypertension. A hyperdynamic circulation results due to these haemodynamic changes in cirrhosis and portal hypertension. eNOS: Endothelial nitric oxide synthase; NO: Nitric oxide; SVR: Systemic vascular resistance; sGC-PKG: Soluble guanylyl cyclase-cGMP-dependent protein kinase.

PORTAL HYPERTENSION: THE KEY TARGET FOR NSBBS

The development of portal hypertension is the key factor leading to decompensation of liver disease such as variceal haemorrhage, ascites formation (with the inherent risk of development of SBP thereafter) and also hepatic encephalopathy[25]. Portal hypertension results from 2 major events: An increase in the intra-hepatic vascular resistance and also an increase on portal venous inflow (Figure 1). Increased intrahepatic resistance can result of a number a pathophysiological mechanisms occurring in liver disease. Structural fixed anatomical changes can result in up to 70% of the cause of intrahepatic resistance increasing[26] with the suggestion that the other 30% the result of an increase in vascular tone. Anatomical disruption within the liver develops by the activation of stellate cells, which in turn, leads to sinusoidal capillirisation. Stellate cells are found in the perisinusoidal space (Space of Disse) within the liver. These cells are the major cell subset involved in liver fibrosis. In health, stellate cells are in an inactivated quiescent state, however when the liver is injured the stellate cells become activated and secrete collagen scar tissue. A reduction in the nitric oxide (NO) production by sinusoidal endothelial cells furthermore causes activation of stellate cells. The stellate cells once activated are the key mediator in the extracellular matrix production[27]. Over time, the formation of fibrous septae and also nodular regeneration leads to alteration of the hepatic architecture, and micro-portal and hepatic venule thrombosis also leads to an increase in the intra-hepatic resistance[28]. All these factors lead to a fixed component of the rise in portal pressure. It is clear that anatomical changes at present are a fixed component in the development of portal hypertension, abrogated by either replacement of full liver tissue (*e.g.,* by liver transplantation), or by bypassing the fixed anatomical restriction (*e.g.,* by a TIPSS). Research strategies are ongoing to modulate the scarring/fibrosis pathways to try to address this "fixed" component at present of portal hypertension[29].

The other more dynamic component to the development of portal hypertension is the change in the vascular tone and portal inflow increase. In cirrhosis activated stellate cells cause sinusoidal vasoconstriction due to an increase in

Table 1 Changes in measurement of portal haemodynamic pressures with different types of portal hypertension

Type of portal hypertension	Example	FHVP	WHVP	HVPG
Pre-hepatic	Portal/splenic vein thrombosis	Normal	Normal	Normal
Pre-sinusoidal	Primary biliary cirrhosis, schistosomiasis, sarcoidosis	Normal	Normal	Normal
Sinusoidal	Alcoholic hepatitis, NASH/alcoholic/viral cirrhosis	Normal	Increased	Increased
Post-sinusoidal	Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome	Normal	Increased	Increased
Post-hepatic	Budd Chiari[1]	-	-	-
	Heart failure	Increased	Increased	Normal

[1]Denotes hepatic vein not cannulated to measure. NASH: Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; HVPG: Hepatic venous pressure gradient; FHVP: Free hepatic vein pressure; WHVP: Wedged hepatic vein pressure.

vasoconstrictive mediators such as endothelin, angiotensin-Ⅱ, arginine vasopressin, RhoA, thromboxane A2 and eicanoside[30-33]. There is also decrease in the vasodilators at a sinusoidal level such as NO - a key vasodilatory mediator in the portal venous system[34] and glucagon. Thus an imbalance exists leading to a reduction of intrahepatic endothelial Nitric Oxide synthase activity, leading to an increase in portal inflow. This mechanism is modifiable *via* NSBBs as is the other major component in the development of portal hypertension - the increased portal inflow (Figure 1).

Ohms law states that the change in pressure (P1-P2) along a blood vessel is a function of the resistance (R) and the rate of blood flow (Q), expressed as P1-P2 = R × Q. In healthy individuals, the liver accommodates changes in blood flow throughout the day and the liver itself is a very low resistance organ. The liver accommodates changes in blood flow without increasing the portal pressure by reducing the pressure in the liver by the recruitment of additional hepatic sinusoids. Thus (P1-P2) does not increase as Q increases but R falls. When Ohms law is applied in advancing liver disease, there is an increase in (intra-hepatic) resistance (R) leading to a rise in pressure (P1-P2), and the formation of porto-systemic collaterals to decompress the higher pressure. Also due to a hyperdynamic circulation there can be an increase in Q, again leading to an increase in (P1-P2) in Ohms law.

Splanchnic vasodilatation occurs as a response to a relatively ischaemic liver or due to extrahepatic excess of NO. This results in soluble guanylyl cyclase-cGMP - dependent protein kinase signalling and smooth muscle cell relaxation[35]. The resultant increased portal blood flow maintains portal hypertension and the hyperdynamic circulation results due to these haemodynamic changes in advancing liver disease. This manifests as a high CO with low systematic vascular resistance (SVR) and arterial hypotension[36]. The hyperdynamic splanchnic circulation (leading to increased portal inflow) is thus one of the key factors involved in the maintenance of portal hypertension and an area where NSBB have a key mechanism of action. The circulatory disturbances that arise (including reduction in CO, increase in heart rate and decrease in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and a reduction in the SVR) can lead to activation of the sympathetic nervous system and also the renin-angiotensin system in an attempt to counteract low arterial pressure[37]. There is an increase thus in not only sodium retention but also total body water retention (often leading to a dilutional hyponatraemia) and plasma/blood volume. Despite this, patients with cirrhosis and advanced disease have a reduced effective arterial blood volume[38,39] which can lead to organ hypoperfusion and problems with hepatorenal syndrome (HRS), or when infection takes hold with further arterial vasodilatation. Also patients can thus encounter problems with paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction (PICD) when ascitic fluid is removed without adequate plasma expansion replacement. With this pathophysiology, it is here that NSBBs indeed may have a beneficial effect in portal hypertension but also may worsen advanced systemic haemodynamic changes in end stage disease[40].

Markers for NSBB effectiveness not only include clinical endpoints such as prevention of variceal haemorrhage or rebleeding from varices, but reductions of portal pressure. Portal pressure measurements can be directly derived from the HVPG (normal range 1-5 mmHg). The HVPG can be measured by advancing a catheter either by a transfemoral or transjugular route into the hepatic vein and here a free hepatic vein pressure (FHVP) is measured. A balloon is then used to wedge the catheter in the hepatic vein and a second pressure is taken [the wedged hepatic vein pressure (WHVP)]. The WHVP reflects sinusoidal pressure. Thereafter the HVPG can be calculated (HVPG = WHPG - FHVP)[41]. The differences between these components depending on the type of portal hypertension are summarised in Table 1. Varices have been shown to be more likely to develop when the HVPG > 10 mmHg[42]. To effectively reduce the risk of variceal haemorrhage, the drop in portal pressure (as measured by the HVPG) must be reduced to < 12 mmHg or by 20%[43] thus allowing a surrogate marker for NSBB effectiveness in any clinical trial or occasionally in clinical practice when indicated.

NSBB - MECHANISM OF ACTION AND FAVOURABLE EFFECTS IN CHRONIC LIVER DISEASE

NSBB: Mechanism of action

NSBBs and their use in liver disease stems back over 3 decades[3] with a well understood mechanism of action

in reducing portal hypertension. NSBBs effects are not only *via* a β1-receptor to reduce the cardiac output and splanchnic blood flow[44,45] but also an additional action *via* β2 receptor blockade, blocking the adrenergic dilatory tone in mesenteric arterioles, thus resulting in an unopposed α-adrenergic vasoconstriction and subsequent reduction in portal blood flow. This "β-2" effect occurs after chronic usage[4]. This dual action is very much different to their counterparts used in cardiac disease such as metoprolol or atenolol that have been shown to be less effective than the NSBBs and thus not recommended in portal hypertension[46,47]. NSBBs include propranolol, nadolol and carvedilol. Propranolol has been used since the original study by Lebrec *et al*[48] in the 1980s however its effect of HVPG reduction can be variable with up to 31% reduction seen in some studies[15]. Up to a third of patients however do not have an adequate haemodynamic response to propranolol despite reductions in azygous flow[49]. Nadolol is another NSBB used with a longer half-life than propranolol due to low lipid solubility and hepatic metabolism[50] which allows for a once-a-day regime as appose to the twice a day of propranolol. It has a similar haemodynamic effect as propranolol[51]. Timolol is another NSBB like nadolol with low lipid solubility, and a greater affinity for β-1 and β-2 receptors[50]. However there is a paucity of comparative data in the setting of this drug in portal hypertension[52].

Carvedilol is one of the new generations of NSBBs with promising data in the setting of portal hypertension. It has an additional vasodilating action due to unopposed alpha-1-receptor blockade. This additional blockade results in a reduction of portocollateral resistance, and a reduction of intrahepatic resistance *via* an effect on hepatic stellate cells[15]. It has been found to be 2-4 times more potent action compared to other NSBBs at a receptor blockade[15]. Carvedilol is protein bound thus in patients with cirrhosis and hypoalbuminaemia there can be an increased bioavailability of it. It has anti-inflammatory, anti-oxidant[53] properties and also an antifibrotic effect[54] along with other roles in enhancing insulin sensitivity and improving mitochondrial function[55]. The role of carvedilol in reducing portal pressure has been compared to other NSBBs. It has been found after chronic usage to reduce HVPG[56] with more patients having a haemodynamic response when compared to propranolol[57]. In another study from Reiberger *et al*[19] the benefits of carvedilol were established in those not responding to propranolol. In this study, 56% of patients who did not respond to propranolol showed a haemodynamic response to carvedilol. There was a drop in HVPG of -19% in the carvedilol group *vs* -12% in the propranolol group. Thus there may indeed be a subset of patients deemed propranolol "haemodynamic non-responders" who are at risk of bleeding despite being on NSBB. Further studies are thus required to assess if carvedilol should be used as first line, or whether all patients on propranolol should have (ideally non-invasive) an assessment for haemodynamic response in the clinical setting and then switched to carvedilol if indeed a "non-responder". Carvedilol has also been compared to variceal band ligation (VBL) in the prevention of 1st variceal haemorrhage with medium or large varices[58]. The NSBB group had lower rates of 1st variceal bleed of 10% *vs* 23% in the band ligation group on intention-to-treat analysis, although there was no difference in mortality or bleeding related mortality between the groups. In this study carvedilol was well tolerated[58] at dose of 12.5 mg and higher doses have shown to have no additive effect in reduction of portal pressure from this dose[19].

Another area of benefit of NSBBs in patients with portal hypertension may indeed include reducing in bacterial translocation. In mice models, propranolol treated mice have been shown to not only have significantly lower portal pressures, but faster intestinal transit times and also lower rates of bacterial overgrowth and translocation[59]. In a meta-analysis by Senzolo *et al*[60], 644 patients (257 propranolol-treated) were evaluated (73% with ascites). The end-point of advent of SBP was used in the 3 randomised controlled trials (RCTs) and 1 primary prophylaxis study, and a statistically significant difference of 12.1% ($P < 0.001$) in favour of propranolol in preventing SBP was found. The beneficial effects were found irrespective of fall of portal pressure measurements thus suggesting an independent effect of NSBB in prevention of SBP irrespective of their benefits in reduction of portal pressure. Reiberger *et al*[61] have recently shown that NSBB therapy decreases intestinal permeability and plasma LPS-binding protein (LBP - a soluble acute phase response protein) and interleukin-(IL-)6 (a pro-inflammatory cytokine related to fever generation and related to such conditions as Systemic Lupus Erythymatosis and Rheumatoid arthritis[62,63]) with higher levels of IL-6/LBP associated with a higher risk of variceal bleeding on follow-up but not mortality. Thus NSBBs have a number of different mechanisms whereby they may indeed have benefit in patients with portal hypertension especially when varices develop (Table 2).

Clinical indications: Oesophageal varices

In the seminal Phase-Ⅲ study of NSBBs in patients with oesophageal varices by Lebrec *et al*[3] 74 patients who had a variceal 1st (index) bleed were randomised to either treatment with propranolol orally or placebo with 96% of the NSBB group free from bleeding at 1 year compared to 50% patients in the placebo group ($P \leq 0.0001$). The role of NSBBs in prevention of 1st variceal haemorrhage (*i.e.,* primary prophylaxis) was studied with Pascal *et al*[4] randomising 230 patients with large oesophageal varices (with no history of previous bleeding) to propranolol or placebo and finding 74% *vs* 39% free from bleeding at 1 year respectively ($P < 0.05$). There was also a survival advantage in the NSBB arm (72% *vs* 51% placebo, $P < 0.05$) thus showing a definite role in primary prevention, echoed thereafter in a number of studies including other NSBBs such as nadolol[64,65]. A meta-analysis of 9 placebo-controlled trials (964 patients) found the -11% (95%CI: -21% to -1%) for bleeding and -9% (95%CI: -18% to -1%) for death when propranolol was

Table 2 Types of non-selective beta-blocker used in cirrhosis

	Propanolol	Carvedilol	Nadalol
Proposed mechanism of action	β-1 activity to reduce cardiac output and reduce portal blood flow through splanchnic vasoconstriction *via* β-2 blockade	β-1 activity to reduce cardiac output and reduce portal blood flow through splanchnic vasoconstriction *via* β-2 blockade. Additional intrinsic α1-adrenergic activity	β-1 activity to reduce cardiac output and reduce portal blood flow through splanchnic vasoconstriction *via* β-2 blockade
Side efffects/cautions[1]	Hypotension, bradycardia, caution in peripheral vascular disease/asthma. To be discontinued at time of SBP, renal impairment and hypotension[1]	Hypotension (more profound than others), bradycardia, caution in peripheral vascular disease/asthma. To be discontinued at time of SBP, renal impairment and hypotension[1]	Hypotension, bradycardia, caution in peripheral vascular disease/asthma. To be discontinued at time of SBP, renal impairment and hypotension[1]
Indications	Primary prophylaxis of variceal haemorrhage (Level 1A, grade A). In combination with VBL for secondary prevention (Level 1a, grade A)[2]	Primary prophylaxis of variceal haemorrhage (Level 1a, grade A). In combination with VBL for secondary prevention (Level 1b, grade B)[2]	Primary prophylaxis of variceal haemorrhage (Level 1a, grade A). In combination with VBL for secondary prevention (Level 1a, grade A)[2]
Dose	40 mg BD if tolerated or once HR < 50-55 bpm	12.5 mg OD if tolerated or once HR < 50-55 bpm	40mg OD (maximum dose 240 mg) or once HR < 50-55 bpm
Mode of administration	Oral	Oral	Oral

[1]For consideration of re-introduction after acute event and depending on clinical judgement; [2]NSBB combined with VBL as standard of care in secondary prevention[23,65]. BD: Bi-daily; OD: Once daily; SBP: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis; VBL: Variceal band ligation; NSBB: Non-selective beta-blocker.

compared to placebo[66]. Primary prophylaxis of variceal haemorrhage with a NSBB is thus recommended at present in patients with medium/large varices[25,67].

The role of NSBBs in primary prophylaxis in patients with no varices or small varices has also been studied. In a RCT patients with small varices were studied and in the group receiving NSBB actually developed more varices in the NSBB arm[68]. In another trial[69], nadolol reduced the incidence of variceal bleeding when compared to placebo but had no survival benefit and more side effects. In another study of NSBBs in an unselected group of patients with chronic liver disease (without cirrhosis or varices in some patients) no benefit was found in the use of NSBBs[70] in prevention of 1st variceal bleed or survival. Another RCT looked at the role of Timolol *vs* placebo in patients without varices but portal hypertension (HVPG > 6 mmHg) and found no difference in variceal bleeding rates, and in fact more side effects of patients on NSBBs[42]. In a meta-analysis of 6 RCTs of cirrhotic patients with small or no varices, incidence of large varices, 1st upper gastrointestinal bleed and death were similar between placebo and NSBB groups[71]. Thus NSBB are not currently recommended for primary prophylaxis in patients without endoscopic evidence of varices or small varices[25,67]. Combination of NSBB and Isosorbide Mononitrate (ISMN - another vasodilator used in patients with angina) has been studied in the setting of primary prophylaxis for variceal bleeding. Nadolol alone *vs* nadolol and ISMN was studied in a RCT, with combination therapy leading to reduced frequency of bleeding however no significant differences in mortality[72]. These findings were not echoed however in a double-blind RCT comparing propranolol and ISMN *vs* propranolol and placebo[73]. With a potential for increased side effects due to hypotension, this strategy is thus currently not recommended for primary prophylaxis[67].

The role of NSBBs in secondary prevention of variceal haemorrhage after an index (1st) variceal bleed has become established over the years[74-76]. A meta-analysis of NSBB (nadolol or propranolol in 12 trials) compared to no treatment found a significant reduction in rebleeding but no mortality benefit[77,78]. The addition of ISMN in a secondary prophylaxis role has shown improved varcieal rebleeding rates in one study[79], but no survival benefit. In a meta-analysis of ISMN alone *vs* ISMN with NSBB or endoscopic therapy showed there was no mortality benefit from combination of ISMN/NSBB than NSBB monotherapy[80]. There have been a number of studies and meta-analysis comparing combined endoscopic VBL and NSBB and monotherapy with either. A large meta-analysis of 23 trials of either VBL or injection sclerotherapy in combination with NSBB concluded that combination therapy led to reduced rebleeding than either NSBB alone or endoscopic therapy alone, however no difference in mortality was found[81]. There has been a number of meta-analysis of numerous trials since then with differing results on combination therapy affecting mortality but a clear benefit in reduction of rebleeding[17,82-84]. A recent multicentre RCT from Stanley *et al*[85] compared carvedilol to VBL in rebleeding and although found a tendency towards improved survival in the carvedilol arm, there was no statistically significant difference in rebleeding rates or mortality (P = 0.857 and P = 0.110, respectively). Combination therapy of VBL and NSBB (propranolol or nadolol) is however now recommended for prevention of variceal rebleeding[25,67].

NSBBs clinical indications: Gastric varices

NSBBs have also been studied in the setting of gastric varices, which historically are known to bleed at a lower portal pressure than their oesophageal counterparts with poorer outcomes[86]. Mishra *et al*[87] studied the role of NSBB (*vs* glue therapy) in primary prophylaxis, comparing them to injection therapy with N-Butyl-2-

Cyanoacrylate glue therapy in the prevention of rebleeding of gastric varices. In 67 patients, the group receiving injection therapy after index bleed had a lower rebleeding rate and lower mortality when compared the NSBB group (15% *vs* 55%, $P = 0.004$ and 3% *vs* 25%, $P = 0.024$ respectively). In another paper in the setting of gastric varices, Hung *et al*[88] compared the effects of endoscopic injection obturation therapy alone compared to that of obturation combined with NSBB in 95 patients after a gastric variceal haemorrhage. Overall rebleeding and survival rates were not different between the two groups ($P = 0.336$ and 0.936, respectively), thus the optimal role of NSBB in patients after an index gastric variceal haemorrhage remains in question. The British Society of Gastroenterology (BSG) recent guidelines[67] stated that NSBB treatment could be considered in selected high risk patients with large gastro-oesophageal type 2[86] (extending down from the oesophagus below the gastro-oesophageal junction into the fundus) after "taking into account the patient's preferences and clinical judgment".

NSBB: THE CURRENT CONTROVERSIES

NSBBs: A deleterious role in advanced cirrhosis?

With the role of NSBBs in portal hypertension and variceal haemorrhage prevention established, the tide however has changed in the last few years with a series of high profile publications questioning their safety in advanced cirrhosis[20,21,89,90]. The detrimental effect of NSBB in patients with ascites was initially provoked in a study by Bañares *et al*[57] with the aim of the study to explore the role of NSBBs in reducing HVPG when patients randomized to carvedilol or propranolol, with the former showing a greater reduction in HVPG (19% ± 2% *vs* -12% ± 2%, $P = 0.001$). There was however a tendency towards an increase in the dose of diuretics required in the carvedilol arm (27% *vs* 8%, $P = 0.07$), suggesting that carvedilol may worsen ascites. As cirrhosis progresses after the development of varices, ascites later can form as the disease gets more advanced as proposed by D'Amico *et al*[75]. Thus with a suggestion of ascites being worsened by NSBB in the study by Bañares *et al*[57], the role of NSBBs in advancing cirrhosis was studied in more detail.

The potential detrimental effect of NSBB in the setting of patients with ascites undergoing a large volume paracentesis (LVP) was studied by Sersté *et al*[89]. In this cross over trial of 10 patients, haemodynamics and plasma renin levels were assessed pre-, immediately post- and 7 d post- LVP in patients on propranolol. The NSBB was phased out and then measurements repeated in a similar fashion. When on NSBB immediately post-LVP the HR did not change ($P = 0.61$) however the MAP significantly fell ($P = 0.007$). When off NSBB, immediately post-LVP the MAP significantly fell again ($P = 0.003$) however with a significant rise in HR ($P = 0.001$). The authors proposed that immediately post-LVP that NSBB may indeed cause a PICD with a lack of rise of compensatory HR in patients on NSBB, which may account for a degree of tissue hypoperfusion. Thus it was proposed that NSBB may indeed contribute to PICD in patients on NSBBs. It is however worth noting that these findings were not replicated in another study[91] exploring the relationship between changes in HVPG induced by NSBB and the development of ascites in compensated cirrhosis (with severe portal hypertension). Eighty-three patients without any previous decompensation of cirrhosis, HVPG ≥ 12 mmHg and large oesophageal varices were included. Haemodynamic studies prior to NSBB (nadolol) were performed and then repeated at 1-3 mo later. This group showed that patients in whom NSBB reduced HVPG by ≥ 10% ("NSBB-responders") indeed had a lower probability of developing ascites (19% *vs* 57% at 3 years, $P < 0.001$), refractory ascites ($P = 0.007$), and HRS ($P = 0.027$). It is worth noting however that these two studies[90,91] were not directly comparable due to slightly different patient cohorts in that one had decompensated patients and the other compensated cirrhotic patients.

The role of NSBBs in refractory ascites has further been questioned by the same French group in a high impact publication[20] out-with the paracentesis setting. In this prospective landmark study, 151 patients were studied (77 on propranolol) with refractory ascites. The 1-year survival was indeed worse than those receiving propranolol [19% (95%CI: 9%-29%) *vs* 64% (95%CI: 52%-76%), $P < 0.0001$)]. Along with NSBB, hyponatraemia, Childs C class and renal dysfunction were predictors of mortality on multivariant analysis. It was concluded that NSBBs are contraindicated in patients with refractory ascites and led to a change in the use of NSBBs in cirrhosis in some parts of the international Hepatology community.

In advanced cirrhosis when bacterial translocation is high, and patients are prone to infections, the role of prophylactic antibiotics is clear but the place of NSBBs has been cast into some doubt. Mandorfer *et al*[90] explored in a retrospective cohort of 607 patients the effects of NSBBs in advanced cirrhosis. NSBBs were shown to improve transplant-free-survival in patients without SBP - HR = 0.75; 95%CI: 0.581-0.968; $P = 0.027$). On development of SBP however, NSBBs were associated with haemodynamic compromise (systolic arterial pressure < 100 mmHg 38% *vs* 18% those not on NSBB, $P = 0.002$), but more importantly increased incidence of HRS (24% *vs* 11%, $P = 0.027$), and reduced transplant free survival (HR = 1.58, 95%CI: 1.098-2.274, $P = 0.014$). This along with the data from a meta-analysis by Senzolo *et al*[60] showing NSBB preventing SBP potentially suggests NSBBs are indeed beneficial in prevention of SBP until late on when infection sets in and patients have difficulty mounting a compensatory cardiac/organ perfusion response on NSBBs.

NSBBs and the window hypothesis

Following on from the Sersté *et al*[20,89] studies, it was proposed that NSBBs were only beneficial during a set time window in the progression of cirrhosis with portal hypertension[21]. The "window hypothesis" proposed

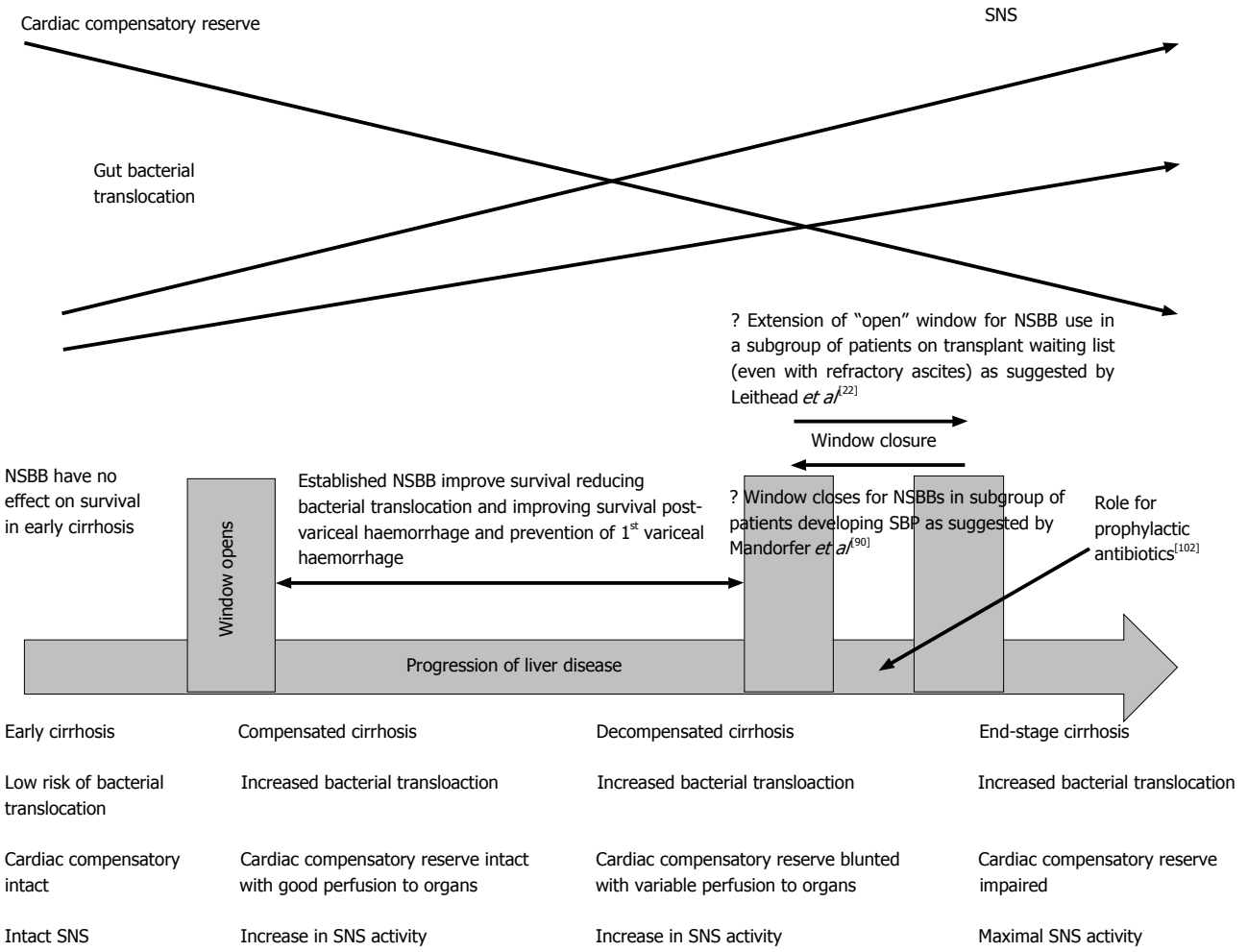


Figure 2 Extended - "window hypothesis" adapted and revised from Krag *et al*[21]. The window hypothesis illustrates that in early portal hypertension when low risk of bacterial translocation and adequate cardiac compensatory reserve, NSBBs have no effect on survival[25,67]. As disease progresses and varices enlarge there is clear benefit of NSBB in primary and secondary prophylaxis in improving mortality and also reducing rebleeding rates. The original widow hypothesis[21] commented that the window for benefit of NSBBs then may indeed close in decompensated cirrhosis (*e.g.*, patients with refractory ascites[20]) however the data from Leithead *et al*[22] would suggest the window may indeed remain open even in such patients for a period of time. This window however may indeed close once patients have developed an episode of SBP[90]. SNS: Sympathetic nervous system activity; NSBB: Non-selective beta-blocker; SBP: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.

that there may be no benefit in early cirrhosis when there is less risk of bacterial translocation, no increase in the sympathetic nervous system activity, and when the cardiac compensatory reserve is preserved, *i.e.,* a milder splanchnic and systemic haemodynamic state[42] (Figure 2). In advancing cirrhosis however there is an up-regulation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis with salt and water preservation to attempt to compensate for a reduced effective arterial circulation (due to splanchnic vasodilatation)/cardiac output[92]. This leads to salt and water retention, and ascites formation and a loss of compensatory reserve with often hypoperfusion to organs as a result. The maintenance of effective perfusion to organs is critical especially in the face of infection, at it was proposed that at this stage the window closes and NSBBs may indeed be detrimental[21]. As cirrhosis develops however, NSBB were felt to be beneficial in reducing variceal haemorrhage and reducing bacterial translocation with an increasing sympathetic nervous system drive. The window was then felt to close as cirrhosis progresses, patients develops refractory ascites and NSBBs were thought to exert a negative impact on the cardiac compensatory reserve. With MAP being found to be an independent predictor of survival in patients with cirrhosis and ascites[93] it was proposed[21] that NSBBs by lowering MAP may indeed contribute further to hypoperfusion of organs (especially in the context of further sepsis-induced vasodilatation) leading to an increase in mortality or HRS - well known to be associated with arterial underfilling from splanchnic vasodilatation[94].

NSBB-refractory ascites cessation: The rebuttal?

The data from Sersté *et al*[20] is indeed compelling, with a change of practice recommended following years of usage of NSBBs in cirrhosis and advanced disease. One important comment is that to date there has been no RCT showing a deleterious effect of NSBBs in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. There were a number of criticisms of the landmark study raised from

sections of the Hepatology community from the paper by Sersté *et al*[20]. On exploring the patient demographics in more detail, all patients who had NSBBs had confirmed varices, however in the group not receiving them only 4.1% had varices. Patients in the NSBB arm were indeed sicker with a difference in bilirubin levels (56 *vs* 48 mg/dL, $P = 0.01$), lower sodium levels and more encephalopathy which may have influenced outcome. Furthermore, the NSBB arm had more Child Pugh Grade C patients and also more patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). There was no comment in the paper about the alcohol intake of the patient cohorts, and with similar MELD and Child Pugh scores, that there may have been a potential for patients in the NSBB arm having acute alcoholic hepatitis thus accounting for the hyperbilirubinaemia, a condition with a poor prognosis. Alcohol alone has been shown to cause microvasculature obstruction and capillarization of hepatic sinusoids may lead to rises in portal pressure[95] thus introducing some potential variability into the study. Other variables between the patient cohort was that the NSBB has a lower arterial pressures ($P < 0.0001$) - which rather than secondary to the effects of NSBBs may have indeed reflected a sicker cohort of patients with lower cardiac output or indeed an impaired cardiac compensatory reserve even prior to NSBB institution. In the subset of patients (39%) who had HVPG monitoring, there was no significant difference in the HVPG in these patients 20 ($\pm$ 4.5) mmHg in the NSBB group *vs* 19.1 ($\pm$ 5) mmHg in those without NSBB. Again this leads evidence that rather than NSBB having a deleterious causative effect, the differences in patient characteristics may have had more to do with the outcomes. The next major area of interest in this paper, was that on multivariant analysis apart from use of NSBB, class of Child Pugh, HCC, aetiology of refractory ascites, renal impairment and hyponatraemia were all independent predictors of death. Interestingly however MELD score did not come out as a predictor of death despite its use in scoring patients to predict mortality[95-98] in patients with cirrhosis and on waiting lists for liver transplantation.

Recently the question of NSBB and their effects in advanced portal hypertension was studied from our own group in the United Kingdom. Leithead *et al*[22] examined the role of NSBBs on patients listed for adult liver transplantation in a single centre. In this retrospective study, 322 patients listed for liver transplantation were studied - with all patients having ascites (34.8% had refractory ascites). In a multivariate competing risk Cox model, patients on NSBB had reduced mortality compared with matched non-NSBB patients (HR = 0.55, 95%CI: 0.32-0.95, $P = 0.032$). Similarly, in the subgroup of patients with refractory ascites ($n = 117$), NSBB remained independently associated with less wait-list death (adjusted HR = 0.35; 95%CI: 0.14-0.86, $P = 0.022$). The strengths of this study included a well matched patient group, large numbers, advanced liver disease patients on the liver transplant waiting list abstinent from alcohol. It should be noted that the study groups were indeed different from that in the study from Sersté *et al*[20] with patients in this study being highly selected group, listed for liver transplantation. The study however had some criticisms including the retrospective single centre design. Selection bias must be considered in any non-randomised trial. To counter this, the study group used propensity risk score matching to try to mimimise selection bias. Patients were on lower doses of NSBB when compared to the study of Sersté *et al*[20] however another criticism was a was a lack of haemodynamic measurements in this study[22].

Leithead *et al*[22] proposed that the benefit of NSBB this may indeed be due to the reduction of bacterial translocation in patients listed for liver transplantation with ascites, and that NSBB may indeed reduce low level of the systemic inflammatory response in such patients, which in effect may reduce portal pressure too. Systemic inflammatory response (SIRS) is increasingly recognised as a pathogenetic factor in the circulatory dysfunction of advanced cirrhosis; patients with child-pugh class C disease have a greater frequency of bacterial translocation, and patients (who have ascites) with evidence of endotoxemia have more pronounced circulatory dysfunction[96,97]. Leithead *et al*[22] proposed that the window hypothesis may actually stay longer open for a subset of patients with refractory ascites. A retrospective series from another large United Kingdom transplant centre[98] reviewed patients who had refractory ascites attending for LVP. Of 114 consecutive patients, 36 patients were receiving a NSBB with no differences in survival found between the groups ($P = 0.93$). Doses of propranolol used in this study were between 40-80 mg. One important way to add information to the argument regarding the safety, efficacy and benefit of NSBBs in advanced liver disease/cirrhosis and patients with ascites would be through a meta-analytical approach. A recent review by Kimer *et al*[99] rather than perform a meta-analysis reviewed studies and their characteristics reported on the heterogeneity of the study designs and definitions of ascites. Following this, they reported on their own experience in 61 patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites with no increase in mortality in patients on NSBBs. In the 2015 AASLD meeting, Chirapongsathorn *et al*[100] reported on a meta-analysis of 4 RCTs and 8 observational studies including 2486 patients with ascites. When compared to patients not on NSBBs, the use of NSBBs was found not to increase mortality in patients with ascites (RR = 0.94; 95%CI: 0.6-1.47, $P = 0.77$) or with refractory ascites (RR = 0.86, 95%CI: 0.47-1.57; $P = 0.63$). The use of NSBBs was not associated with death at 6 mo, 1 year or 2 years. A notable limitation is the heterogeneity of the studies included in such meta-analyses. Some patients may be late in the advanced liver cirrhosis stage (such as the cohort in our own study listed for liver transplantation[22]) and others earlier on in the window hypothesis where there indeed is a degree of cardiac compensatory reserve, and may be less likely to suffer major haemodynamic disturbances when an insult occurs such as infections (Table 3).

In a recent study by Bossen *et al*[101], data from 3 trials

Table 3 Summary of studies/recent guidelines with non-selective beta-blocker in advanced cirrhosis

Ref.	Year, country	Study design	Findings/recommendations	Strenghts/weaknesses of study (if applicable)
Bañares *et al*[57]	2002, Spain	Randomised controlled trial	More favorable reduction of HVPG comparing carvedilol with propranolol however an increase in diuretic requirement in patients on carvedilol suggesting potential worsening of ascites	Increased requirement of diuretic not a hard end-point
Sersté *et al*[20]	2010, France	Single centre observational prospective case study	Patients on NSBB in refractory ascites having higher 1-year mortality than those not on NSBB	Non-randomised Lack of haemodynamic data. No competing risk analysis
Mandorfer *et al*[90]	2014, Australia	Single centre retrospective study	NSBB associated with higher transplant free survival but increase in renal dysfunction and mortality following episode of SBP	Groups not well matched at baseline with NSBB group having higher bilirubin in subgroup analysis
Leithead *et al*[22]	2015, United Kingdom	Single centre, retrospective case study	NSBB associated with reduced wait-list mortality and a higher likelihood of survival to transplantation	Lack of haemodynamic measurements. Non randomized. Well matched groups
Tripathi *et al*[67]	2015, United Kingdom	British guidelines	NSBB to be continued till episode of SBP, hypotension of renal failure (based on level 2b, Grade B evidence)	National guidelines based on all available evidence
Kimer *et al*[99]	2015, Denmark	61 patients with cirrhosis and ascites (following a review of 14 trials)	No survival difference in patients on/not NSBBs in patient cohorts with ascites	Small retrospective analysis
de Franchis[25]	2015, International	Meeting consensus statements	NSBB dose reduction or discontinuation can be considered if hypotension/ hyponatraemia or renal function impairment in patients with refractory ascites. If a clear precipitant for these (*e.g.*, SBP), NSBB can be restarted once parameters normalised	International consensus statements based on evidence
Robins *et al*[98]	2014, United Kingdom	Letter - retrospective review of 114 patients undergoing LVP	No significant difference in survival comparing patients on NSBB and those not	Small retrospective series
Bossen *et al*[101]	2015, Denmark and France	Post-hoc analysis of 3 RCTs	NSBBs not associated with increase in mortality in patients with cirrhosis and ascites Cessation of NSBB linked thereafter to increase in mortality due to liver decompensation events	Multicentre trials, 3 RCTs, large data set and reflective of real world experience. Lack of haemodyamic studies and assessment of severity of portal hypertension. NSBBs stopped during admission so? true reflection of their effects on mortality

HVPG: Hepatic venous pressure gradient; SBP: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis; LVP: Large volume paracentesis; NSBB: Non-selective beta-blocker; RCTs: Randomised controlled trials.

of 1198 patients was reviewed in a post-hoc analysis to assess the effect of the use of NSBBs on mortality in patients with cirrhosis including the subgroup who had ascites. A cox-regression analysis was performed to assess for mortality once correcting for variables between groups of patients on NSBBs (n = 559) compared to those not (n = 629). The data were taken from 3 trials conducted to assess the safety of satavaptan in treating ascites. Two hundred and forty patients had diuretic refractory ascites requiring regular paracentesis - although the definition and categorization of refractory or diuretic responsive ascites was down to independent clinicians per site. The important finding from such a well-constructed, rigorous and clinically relevant study/ analysis was that NSBBs did not increase mortality or hospitilisation in patients with cirrhosis or in the subgroup of those with refractory ascites. Although there were no portal pressure measurements performed and a lack of data on the presence of varices (thus lack of markers of severity of portal hypertension), this was a real world practice/experience. The authors also tried to address the sub-groups who have differences in systemic haemodynamics within the window hypothesis based on MAP with no obvious effect on mortality between groups. Interestingly during the follow-up period, 29% of those on NSBB at the beginning of entry to trials stopped these, reflecting possible current day practice. This cessation of NSBB was thereafter linked to a sharp increase in mortality and coincided with not only hospitalization but also variceal bleeding, bacterial infection, and/or development of the HRS. Despite being a well conducted trial with actual clinical data, it should be noted that only 133 patients had a MELD score > 18, thus may not actually have been further down the window hypothesis pathway. Furthermore, as the NSBBs were stopped mid-way through study/admission it is difficult to conclude mortality would/would not have differed if they had actually been continued to the end-points stated. Patients on NSBBs had a median MAP of 83 mmHg which was similar to the group who were

not on a NSBB and therefore are not representative of the group previously shown to be harmed by the use of NSBBs. The authors concluded that discontinuation of NSBBs increased the mortality by over 5 times. It is more biologically plausible that this increase is due to the reasons NSBBs were discontinued in the first place, *i.e.,* hospitalization, infections and bleeding. It is likely that NSBBs would have impaired the cardiovascular reserve during these episodes thus contributing to the higher mortality. This relationship could have been demonstrated by close monitoring of MAP of patients on NSBBs after their discontinuation. This is a major limitation of studies performing post hoc analysis.

RECENT ADVANCES AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS OF NSBBs IN LIVER DISEASE

NSBBs: Bacterial translocation and effect in infections

The role of NSBBs in advanced cirrhosis certainly needs further evaluation. A large multicentre trial looking at the beneficial or deleterious effects of NSBBs in outcome of patients with advanced portal hypertension, especially in patients with ascites is clearly required. With the data suggesting that NSBBs have a deleterious effect after 1st episode of SBP[90], but with conflicting animal data suggesting NSBBs may indeed reduce bacterial translocation across the gut[59] the optimal timing of administration of NSBBs and their role in infection prevention or clinical deterioration needs to be clarified. Another issue is whether in patients who are at high risk of SBP as per the criteria outlined by Fernández *et al*[102] (child-pugh score ≥ 9 points with serum bilirubin level ≥ 3 mg/dL) or impaired renal function (serum creatinine level ≥ 1.2 mg/dL, blood urea nitrogen level ≥ 25 mg/dL, or serum sodium level ≤ 130 mEq/L) in whom primary prophylaxis is recommended should have their NSBBs discontinued or not, and also the optimal timing thereafter for reintroduction? Current BSG guidelines[67] suggest that NSBB are indeed discontinued at time of first advent of SBP however the lead up to this in those at high risk is not clear, and the potential benefits of NSBB in prophylaxis of variceal haemorrhage and reduction of potential low-grade SIRS/bacterial translocation need to be weighed up against the development of SBP. Clinical judgment however is required with reintroduction of NSBB once an acute septic hit has resolved. In patients with refractory ascites, the Baveno Ⅵ guidelines[25] state that NSBBs should be discontinued if hypotension (systolic blood pressure < 90 mmHg, hyponatraemia (< 130 mEq/L) or AKI. They state if a clear precipitant such as SBP (or gastrointestinal bleed) than NSBB should be considered to be restarted once the parameters cited normalise - however the grading of evidence for these statements was 5:D (expert opinions based on non-systematic reviews) - thus it should be interpreted with caution. Also cessation of NSBB in infective states such as SBP should be done with caution as SBP can increase portal pressure itself *via* bacterial translocation and thus a pro-inflammatory release at a sinusoidal level with consequent rise in portal pressure[103]. Rather than cessation of NSBB completely, in the author's opinion continuation with close observation may be a preferable strategy, although further trials are warranted for this approach. Potentially stratifying patients into risk of SBP based on not only the Fernández *et al*[102] criteria, but using variceal assessment and HVPG (or non-invasive portal pressure studies) may allow a future study to look into randomising patients to NSBB alone, NSBB with primary prophylaxis of antibiotics or antibiotics alone, and then following patients up for the advents of SBP and variceal haemorrhage.

NSBBs and portal vein thrombosis

Another area to be studied is the effect of NSBBs on portal blood flow, and whether this could lead to portal vein thrombosis (PVT) due to stagnant blood flow within the portal vein. Qi *et al*[104] discussed the hypothesis of NSBB potentially causing a reduction of portal vein inflow however with a lack of any large trials this area is still hypothetical. To date, one small unpublished study[105] found in 56 cirrhotic patients (with no HCC) who had an ultrasound every 6 mo on follow-up, on multivariant analysis the use on NSBB was an independent predictor of PVT (OR = 3.3, 95%CI: 1.4-6.8, $P < 0.001$). In another study published in abstract form retrospectively studied a large cohort of 568 patients assessing for factors predictive of the development of PVTs[106]. Although only 23 patients developed PVT, on mutlivariant analysis NSBBs were a risk factor for development of PVT (OR = 4.3, 95%CI: 1.4-12.6; $P = 0.01$). Larger published studies however are needed to explore this association in more detail, with ideally HVPG measurements.

NSBBs and HVPG

One area pertaining to NSBB research is indeed the measurement of HVPG and guided response when using any medical therapies - especially NSBBs. This modality is only reserved in specialist centres, often in a research setting only. The absence of assessment of haemodynamic response remains a criticism levelled at multiple research papers in the field, even those that have suggested changes in clinical practice in patients on NSBBS[20,22]. The role of NSBB - especially carvedilol with its more potent effect than propranolol in primary prophylaxis in small varices or even the prevention of variceal formation is not clear as yet, and longitudinal studies are required in this field, to see if the NSBB window for opening can be extended earlier in the disease course. Also studies comparing carvedilol with the other NSBBs are required in both a primary and secondary prophylaxis setting and in patients with advanced cirrhosis. If patients are diagnosed with non-invasive evidence of portal hypertension from imaging, blood work or elastography methods (after endoscopic verification of no varices or small varices)[107] a RCT is needed to assess intermittently the development of

varices comparing propranolol, carvedilol, nadolol and placebo. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis of 5 studies comparing carvedilol and propranolol suggested better haemodynamic reduction profile of carvedilol however commented on the lack of "quality" of the trials[108].

Other areas of interest include the role of combined different types of NSBB with VBL after a variceal haemorrhage compared to NSBB alone, to attempt to show what is the optimal therapy for prevention of rebleeding. In a trial from Egypt[109] published in abstract form, propranolol was studied in the prevention of recurrence of varices after endoscopic eradication. Ninety patients who had varices eradicated (primary and secondary prophylaxis) were divided into just follow-up alone (n = 43) or propranolol (n = 47). Propranolol use was associated with a delay in time to recurrence of varices, but not in the recurrence of varices. Also teasing out which NSBB reduces rebleeding rates superiorly is indeed required in a potential trial. A combined or an additive approach needs to be studied further, where if there is a failure to reduce size of varices (or reduce HVPG) by either banding or NSBBs alone, and assessing whether an addition of the other modalities improves HVPG reduction and rebleeding rates. To explore these issues in more detail, well-constructed likely multicentre RCTs large studies are required. This not only applies to oesophageal varices but gastric varices as well when patients cannot be entered necessarily into a band ligation programme after a herald bleed, thus more interest in NSBB could be applicable in prevention of gastric variceal rebleeding - and comparison of different NSBBs.

NSBBs and alcoholic hepatitis and ACLF

Another potential area of interest could be the role of NSBBs in patients with acute alcoholic hepatitis, one of the most florid manifestations of liver disease. Although in the studies from Plevris *et al*[70] there was no benefit in prevention of 1st variceal bleed in a cohort of patients with chronic liver disease, assessment of levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines, and even gut bacterial translocation rates in experimental models of alcoholic hepatitis when NSBBs administered and when not would be interesting. As the mice models have shown, NSBBs can significantly lower portal pressures, but also speed up intestinal transit times and also lower rates of bacterial overgrowth and translocation[59]. In this study propranolol was used, thus the role of carvedilol would be interesting. This could then be translated to an alcoholic hepatitis patient cohort with measurements of portal pressure and pro-inflammatory cytokine release, and to assess if NSBBs had a role in prevention of HRS or worsening of it. A recent retrospective study from Sersté *et al*[23] tried to answer this question, identifying 139 biopsy proven patients with alcoholic hepatitis with 34.5% receiving a NSBB. These patients had lower heart rates, MAP but comparable MELD cores and Maddrey discriminant functions to the non-NSBB arm. There was a higher 168-d cumulative incidence of AKI found in the NSBB group (P = 0.0001) however similar 168-d transplant free survival between the groups. Thus it may well be that patients with Alcoholic Hepatitis and a marked SIRS component with marked systemic vasodilatation may not indeed benefit from NSBBs, whereas another subgroup where bacterial translocation (in the earlier stages of disease) can be reduced may benefit having NSBBs continued. The effect of NSBBs on SIRS was studied in a high profile study from Mookerjee *et al*[24], this time in patients with ACLF. In this prospective observational study, 349 patients were studied with 47% receiving NSBBs. The advent of ACLF was observed with lower rates of ACLF in patients at presentation (P = 0.047) who were on NSBBs. On follow-up patients on NSBBs had a better 28-d survival [estimated risk reduction 0.596 (95%CI: 0.361-0.985; P = 0.0436)] and improvement in survival was associated with a significantly lower white cell count [NSBB: 8.5 (5.8); no NSBB: 10.8 (6.6); P = 0.002] suggesting those on NSBBs may either be more effective in those patients who have lower levels/grade of SIRS or may potentially reduce SIRS *via* effects on bacterial translocation in ACLF patients. A major limitation of this study is the lack of methods to control for differences in baseline characteristics between NSBBs and non-NSBBs groups, such as propensity score matching. A significant proportion of patients discontinued NSBBs for reasons that are not clear.

NSBBs and HCC

NSBBs, by way of potential reducing bacterial translocation and also reducing levels of SIRS may indeed have a hypothetical benefit in reducing the portal load of danger signals/molecules from the gut to the liver, with a potential benefit in altering the cascade in development of HCC. HCC is known to be linked to bacterial translocation and liver inflammation through Toll-like receptor signalling[110], thus one could propose NSBBs may have a beneficial effect in preventing signalling and translocation. There is a clear association between the inflammatory cascade and HCC formation[111] thus reducing the bacterial translocation stimulus for inflammation could be an important step in cancer prevention. At experimental level, NSBBs have also been shown to inhibit key processes involved in tumour development such as decreasing angiogenesis by inhibiting vascular endothelial growth factors, and by blocking adrenergic-mediated stimulation that can promote angiogenesis[112]. Beta-blockers too may block cell proliferation, migration, invasion, resistance to programmed cell death and metastasis too[113,114] and have been shown to improve the effect of some chemotherapeutic agents[115]. To this end a systematic review from Thiele *et al*[116] recently examined 23 trials on 2618 patients with cirrhosis to see if there was a link between patients on NSBB and reduction in incidence of HCC. The study found that NSBBs did not reduce HCC related mortality. Of the 47 of 694 (NSBB arm) developed HCC *vs* 65 of 697 controls (risk difference -0.026; 95%CI: -0.052 to -0.001; number needed to treat 38 patients). This area certainly requires further research.

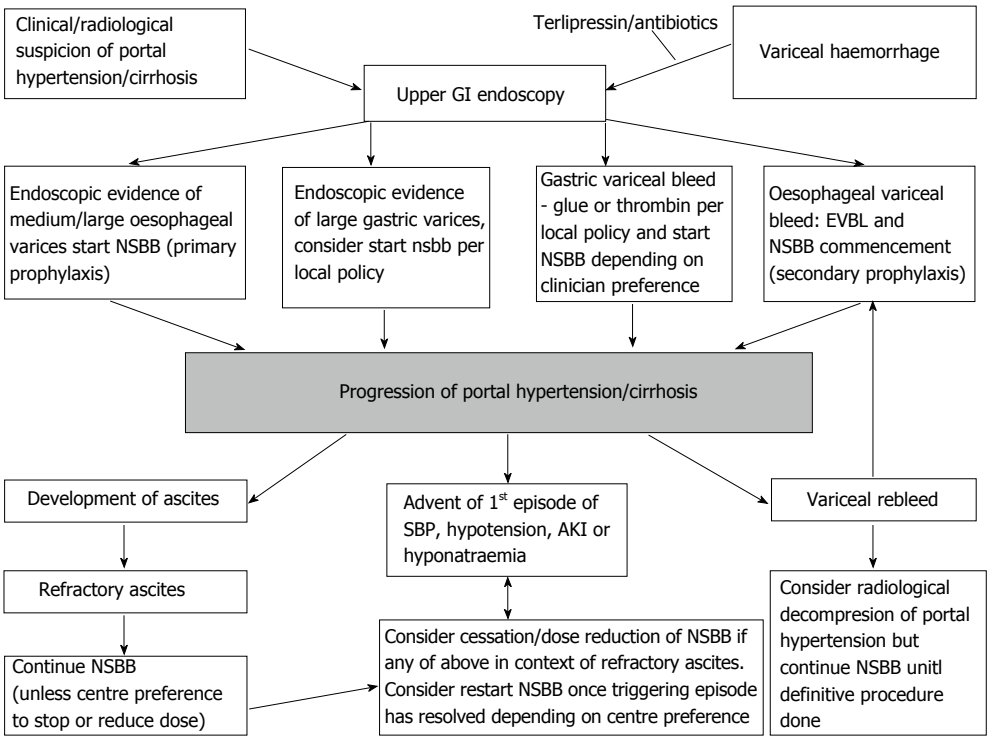


Figure 3 Proposed algorithm of Non-selective beta-blocker usage based on current guidelines and recent papers. NSBB: Non-selective beta-blocker; GI: Gastrointestinal; SBP: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.

NSBBs and stratification of patients per window hypothesis

Further complex mathematical modelling may indeed be required to retrospectively delineate cohorts of patients however this will be very difficult given the trials/study designs and captured data already gained. A well designed RCT however with long term follow-up assessing for markers of SIRS, portal pressure assessments, physiological parameter assessments, recording of septic insults, and cardiac function studies (ideally non-invasively) may add more information in the future. In a recent abstract the role of myocardial dysfunction was investigated by Giannelli *et al*[117]. In 583 patients undergoing liver transplantation assessment, 34% had refractory ascites. Patients had invasive cardiac assessment in including a right heart catheterization (right and left ventricular stroke work index assessments). Patients with refractory ascites had a significantly lower MAP, heart rate and a higher HVPG than those without refractory ascites as well as lower right and left heart stroke work index assessments. NSBBs were associated with a significant drop in the left ventricular stroke work index in patients with refractory ascites compared to those not on NSBBs, however there was no difference noted between the 2 groups in patients without refractory ascites. These findings may support the original window hypothesis[21] that NSBBs may indeed have a negative effect on the cardiac compensatory reserve in advanced cirrhosis (listed for transplantation in the study from Giannelli *et al*[117]. For future studies non-invasive modalities measuring cardiac function (*e.g.,* functional Magnetic resonance imaging) in cirrhosis may be more helpful to tease out the cardiovascular shifts occurring as liver disease progresses in patients with ascites and on NSBBs.

The effect of NSBBs in patients with cirrhosis affecting acute insults such as the development of HRS or AKI is an important area following on from the Mandorfer *et al*[90] study. Future studies describing or assessing outcomes of patients on NSBBs within different phases of the window hypothesis clearly need to examine these acute insults that lead to hospital admission of patients. In a recent multicenter study[118] from the North American Consortium for the Study of End Stage Liver Disease, 981 patients with cirrhosis admitted to hospital were studied. It was found that patients on NSBBs developed AKI compared to those not on NSBBs (49% *vs* 41%, $P = 0.019$), however whilst NSBBs were indeed found by backward elimination regression analysis to be associated with development of AKI during admission, there was no association with death during admission. The advent of infection in those admitted and on a NSBB was associated with AKI compared to those without infection ($P < 0.05$). Thus as per recommendation within Baveno Ⅵ, there may indeed be value to temporarily stop NSBBs in patients who are admitted with a complication of cirrhosis to avoid the issue of hypoperfusion of the kidneys in the face of a potentially impaired compensatory cardiac reserve, thus avoiding the advent of AKI and development of HRS (Figure 3).

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, it is an exciting time for NSBBs in patients

with liver disease. Their role has been firmly established over the years in prevention of variceal haemorrhage and rebleeding. It has however become clear that in certain stages of liver disease their benefit may become outweighed by their deleterious effects on systemic haemodynamics. It is clear that in a subset of patients, continuing NSBBs may indeed be appropriate to prevent variceal haemorrhage, SBP and improve outcomes, however when patients begin to deteriorate with sepsis in later disease or other evidence of end-organ hypoperfusion, then that may indeed be the time that the NSBB window closes. More studies are indeed required to tease out this exact timing for cessation, and also to expand the potential beneficial roles for NSBBs in the future. Not only does the window for NSBBs' beneficial effects open, but with the recent conflicting data as their role in advanced cirrhosis, the debate as to when to stop NSBBs has indeed opened too. There is an urgent need for well designed prospective studies of NSBBs in patients with advanced liver and in the setting of SBP to define clinical parameters for the safe administration of these indispensable treatments for portal hypertension.

REFERENCES

1 **Asrani SK**, Larson JJ, Yawn B, Therneau TM, Kim WR. Underestimation of liver-related mortality in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 375-382.e1-e2 [PMID: 23583430 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro. 2013.04.005]

2 **Lim YS**, Kim WR. The global impact of hepatic fibrosis and end-stage liver disease. *Clin Liver Dis* 2008; **12**: 733-746 [PMID: 18984463 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2008.07.007]

3 **Lebrec D**, Poynard T, Hillon P, Benhamou JP. Propranolol for prevention of recurrent gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis: a controlled study. *N Engl J Med* 1981; **305**: 1371-1374 [PMID: 7029276]

4 **Pascal JP**, Cales P. Propranolol in the prevention of first upper gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage in patients with cirrhosis of the liver and esophageal varices. *N Engl J Med* 1987; **317**: 856-861 [PMID: 3306385]

5 **Gludd LL,** Krag A. Banding ligation versus beta-blockers for primary prevention in oesophageal varices in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **15**: 8CD004544 [PMID: 22895942]

6 **Polio J**, Groszmann RJ. Hemodynamic factors involved in the development and rupture of esophageal varices: a pathophysiologic approach to treatment. *Semin Liver Dis* 1986; **6**: 318-331 [PMID: 3544225]

7 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Groszmann RJ, Fisher RL, Conn HO, Atterbury CE, Glickman M. Portal pressure, presence of gastroesophageal varices and variceal bleeding. *Hepatology* 1985; **5**: 419-424 [PMID: 3873388]

8 **Lebrec D**, De Fleury P, Rueff B, Nahum H, Benhamou JP. Portal hypertension, size of esophageal varices, and risk of gastrointestinal bleeding in alcoholic cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **79**: 1139-1144 [PMID: 6969201]

9 **Abraldes JG**, Tarantino I, Turnes J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Rodés J, Bosch J. Hemodynamic response to pharmacological treatment of portal hypertension and long-term prognosis of cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 902-908 [PMID: 12668985]

10 **D'Amico G**, Garcia-Pagan JC, Luca A, Bosch J. Hepatic vein pressure gradient reduction and prevention of variceal bleeding in cirrhosis: a systematic review. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1611-1624 [PMID: 17101332]

11 **Feu F**, Bordas JM, Luca A, García-Pagán JC, Escorsell A, Bosch J, Rodés J. Reduction of variceal pressure by propranolol: comparison of the effects on portal pressure and azygos blood flow in patients with cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1993; **18**: 1082-1089 [PMID: 8225212]

12 **Smith SC Jr,** Benjamin EJ, Bonow RO, Braun LT, Creager MA, Franklin BA, Gibbons RJ, Grundy SM, Hiratzka LF, Jones DW, Lloyd-Jones DM, Minissian M, Mosca L, Peterson ED, Sacco RL, Spertus J, Stein JH, Taubert KA. World Heart Federation and the Preventive Cardiovascular Nurses Association. AHA/ACCF secondary prevention and risk reduction therapy for patients with coronary and other atherosclerotic vascular disease: 2011 update: a guideline from the American Heart Association and American College of Cardiology Foundation. *Circulation* 2011; **124**: 2458-2473 [PMID: 22052934 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e318235eb4d]

13 **Chobanian AV**, Bakris GL, Black HR, Cushman WC, Green LA, Izzo JL, Jones DW, Materson BJ, Oparil S, Wright JT, Roccella EJ. The Seventh Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure: the JNC 7 report. *JAMA* 2003; **289**: 2560-2572 [PMID: 12748199]

14 **Yancy CW**, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, Butler J, Casey DE Jr, Drazner MH, Fonarow GC, Geraci SA, Horwich T, Januzzi JL, Johnson MR, Kasper EK, Levy WC, Masoudi FA, McBride PE, McMurray JJ, Mitchell JE, Peterson PN, Riegel B, Sam F, Stevenson LW, Tang WH, Tsai EJ, Wilkoff BL. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2013; **128**: 1810-1852 [PMID: 23741057 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e31829e8807]

15 **Tripathi D**, Hayes PC. Beta-blockers in portal hypertension: new developments and controversies. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 655-667 [PMID: 24134058 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12360]

16 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Bosch J. Management of varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 823-832 [PMID: 20200386 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra0901512]

17 **Thiele M**, Krag A, Rohde U, Gluud LL. Meta-analysis: banding ligation and medical interventions for the prevention of rebleeding from oesophageal varices. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 1155-1165 [PMID: 22449261 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.05074.x]

18 **Poynard T**, Calès P, Pasta L, Ideo G, Pascal JP, Pagliaro L, Lebrec D. Beta-adrenergic-antagonist drugs in the prevention of gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis and esophageal varices. An analysis of data and prognostic factors in 589 patients from four randomized clinical trials. Franco-Italian Multicenter Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1991; **324**: 1532-1538 [PMID: 1674104]

19 **Reiberger T**, Ulbrich G, Ferlitsch A, Payer BA, Schwabl P, Pinter M, Heinisch BB, Trauner M, Kramer L, Peck-Radosavljevic M. Carvedilol for primary prophylaxis of variceal bleeding in cirrhotic patients with haemodynamic non-response to propranolol. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1634-1641 [PMID: 23250049 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-304038]

20 **Sersté T**, Melot C, Francoz C, Durand F, Rautou PE, Valla D, Moreau R, Lebrec D. Deleterious effects of beta-blockers on survival in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 1017-1022 [PMID: 20583214 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23775]

21 **Krag A**, Wiest R, Albillos A, Gluud LL. The window hypothesis: haemodynamic and non-haemodynamic effects of β-blockers improve survival of patients with cirrhosis during a window in the disease. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 967-969 [PMID: 22234982 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-301348]

22 **Leithead JA**, Rajoriya N, Tehami N, Hodson J, Gunson BK, Tripathi D, Ferguson JW. Non-selective β-blockers are associated with improved survival in patients with ascites listed for liver transplantation. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1111-1119 [PMID: 25281417 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306502]

23 **Sersté T**, Njimi H, Degré D, Deltenre P, Schreiber J, Lepida A, Trépo E, Gustot T, Moreno C. The use of beta-blockers is associated with the occurrence of acute kidney injury in severe alcoholic hepatitis. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 1974-1982 [PMID: 25611961 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12786]

24 **Mookerjee RP,** Pavesi M, Thomsen KL, Mehta G, MacNaughtan J, Bendtsen F, Coenraad M, Sperl J, Gines P, Moreau R, Arroyo V, Jalan R. Treatment with non-selective beta-blockers is associated with reduced severity of systemic inflammation and improved

survival of patients with acute -on-chronic-liver failure. *J Hepatol* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26519600 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.10.018]
25 **de Franchis R**. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: Report of the Baveno VI Consensus Workshop: Stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. *J Hepatol* 2015; **63**: 743-752 [PMID: 26047908 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.05.022]
26 **Nagula S**, Jain D, Groszmann RJ, Garcia-Tsao G. Histological-hemodynamic correlation in cirrhosis-a histological classification of the severity of cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: 111-117 [PMID: 16274836]
27 **Deleve LD**, Wang X, Guo Y. Sinusoidal endothelial cells prevent rat stellate cell activation and promote reversion to quiescence. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 920-930 [PMID: 18613151 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22351]
28 **Friedman SL**. Mechanisms of hepatic fibrogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 1655-1669 [PMID: 18471545 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.03.003]
29 **Ismail MH**, Pinzani M. Reversal of hepatic fibrosis: pathophysiological basis of antifibrotic therapies. *Hepat Med* 2011; **3**: 69-80 [PMID: 24367223 DOI: 10.2147/HMER.S905]
30 **Zhou Q**, Hennenberg M, Trebicka J, Jochem K, Leifeld L, Biecker E, Sauerbruch T, Heller J. Intrahepatic upregulation of RhoA and Rho-kinase signalling contributes to increased hepatic vascular resistance in rats with secondary biliary cirrhosis. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1296-1305 [PMID: 16492715]
31 **Rockey D**. The cellular pathogenesis of portal hypertension: stellate cell contractility, endothelin, and nitric oxide. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 2-5 [PMID: 8985256]
32 **Gracia-Sancho J**, Laviña B, Rodríguez-Vilarrupla A, García-Calderó H, Bosch J, García-Pagán JC. Enhanced vasoconstrictor prostanoid production by sinusoidal endothelial cells increases portal perfusion pressure in cirrhotic rat livers. *J Hepatol* 2007; **47**: 220-227 [PMID: 17459512]
33 **Bataller R**, Sancho-Bru P, Ginès P, Lora JM, Al-Garawi A, Solé M, Colmenero J, Nicolás JM, Jiménez W, Weich N, Gutiérrez-Ramos JC, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Activated human hepatic stellate cells express the renin-angiotensin system and synthesize angiotensin II. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 117-125 [PMID: 12851877]
34 **Mittal MK**, Gupta TK, Lee FY, Sieber CC, Groszmann RJ. Nitric oxide modulates hepatic vascular tone in normal rat liver. *Am J Physiol* 1994; **267**: G416-G422 [PMID: 7943239]
35 **Wiest R**, Groszmann RJ. The paradox of nitric oxide in cirrhosis and portal hypertension: too much, not enough. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 478-491 [PMID: 11826425]
36 **Graham DY**, Smith JL. The course of patients after variceal hemorrhage. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **80**: 800-809 [PMID: 6970703]
37 **Møller S**, Bendtsen F, Henriksen JH. Effect of volume expansion on systemic hemodynamics and central and arterial blood volume in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1917-1925 [PMID: 7498657]
38 **Arroyo V**, Ginès P. Mechanism of sodium retention and ascites formation in cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 1993; **17** Suppl 2: S24-S28 [PMID: 8491967]
39 **Henriksen JH**, Bendtsen F, Sørensen TI, Stadeager C, Ring-Larsen H. Reduced central blood volume in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **97**: 1506-1513 [PMID: 2583416]
40 **Ge PS**, Runyon BA. The changing role of beta-blocker therapy in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 643-653 [PMID: 24076364 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.09.016]
41 **Groszmann RJ**, Wongcharatrawee S. The hepatic venous pressure gradient: anything worth doing should be done right. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 280-282 [PMID: 14767976]
42 **Groszmann RJ**, Garcia-Tsao G, Bosch J, Grace ND, Burroughs AK, Planas R, Escorsell A, Garcia-Pagan JC, Patch D, Matloff DS, Gao H, Makuch R. Beta-blockers to prevent gastroesophageal varices in patients with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 2254-2261 [PMID: 16306522]
43 **Feu F**, García-Pagán JC, Bosch J, Luca A, Terés J, Escorsell A, Rodés J. Relation between portal pressure response to pharmacotherapy and risk of recurrent variceal haemorrhage in patients with cirrhosis. *Lancet* 1995; **346**: 1056-1059 [PMID: 7564785]
44 **Ohnishi K**, Nakayama T, Saito M, Hatano H, Tsukamoto T, Terabayashi H, Sugita S, Wada K, Nomura F, Koen H. Effects of propranolol on portal hemodynamics in patients with chronic liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1985; **80**: 132-135 [PMID: 3881933]
45 **Mastai R**, Bosch J, Navasa M, Kravetz D, Bruix J, Viola C, Rodés J. Effects of alpha-adrenergic stimulation and beta-adrenergic blockade on azygos blood flow and splanchnic haemodynamics in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 1987; **4**: 71-79 [PMID: 3033061]
46 **Westaby D**, Melia WM, Macdougall BR, Hegarty JE, Gimson AE, Williams R. B1 selective adrenoreceptor blockade for the long term management of variceal bleeding. A prospective randomised trial to compare oral metoprolol with injection sclerotherapy in cirrhosis. *Gut* 1985; **26**: 421-425 [PMID: 3884469]
47 **Hillon P**, Lebrec D, Muńoz C, Jungers M, Goldfarb G, Benhamou JP. Comparison of the effects of a cardioselective and a nonselective beta-blocker on portal hypertension in patients with cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1982; **2**: 528-531 [PMID: 7118065]
48 **Lebrec D**, Nouel O, Corbic M, Benhamou JP. Propranolol--a medical treatment for portal hypertension? *Lancet* 1980; **2**: 180-182 [PMID: 6105342]
49 **Tripathi D**, Hayes PC. Review article: a drug therapy for the prevention of variceal haemorrhage. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 291-310 [PMID: 11207505]
50 **Borchard U**. Pharmacological properties of beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs. *J Clin Basic Cardiol* 1998; **1**: 5-9
51 **Gatta A**, Bolognesi M, Merkel C, Finucci GF, Angeli P, Sacerdoti D, Ruol A. Long-term effects of beta-adrenergic blockade with nadolol on hepatic and renal haemodynamics and function in cirrhotics. *Clin Physiol* 1987; **7**: 377-387 [PMID: 3665396]
52 **Escorsell A**, Ferayorni L, Bosch J, García-Pagán JC, García-Tsao G, Grace ND, Rodés J, Groszmann RJ. The portal pressure response to beta-blockade is greater in cirrhotic patients without varices than in those with varices. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 2012-2016 [PMID: 9178694]
53 **Akbas H**, Ozden M, Kanko M, Maral H, Bulbul S, Yavuz S, Ozker E, Berki T. Protective antioxidant effects of carvedilol in a rat model of ischaemia-reperfusion injury. *J Int Med Res* 2005; **33**: 528-536 [PMID: 16222886]
54 **Hamdy N**, El-Demerdash E. New therapeutic aspect for carvedilol: antifibrotic effects of carvedilol in chronic carbon tetrachloride-induced liver damage. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2012; **261**: 292-299 [PMID: 22543095 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2012.04.012]
55 **Bakris GL**, Fonseca V, Katholi RE, McGill JB, Messerli FH, Phillips RA, Raskin P, Wright JT, Oakes R, Lukas MA, Anderson KM, Bell DS. Metabolic effects of carvedilol vs metoprolol in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and hypertension: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004; **292**: 2227-2236 [PMID: 15536109]
56 **Tripathi D**, Therapondos G, Lui HF, Stanley AJ, Hayes PC. Haemodynamic effects of acute and chronic administration of low-dose carvedilol, a vasodilating beta-blocker, in patients with cirrhosis and portal hypertension. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 373-380 [PMID: 11876689]
57 **Bañares R**, Moitinho E, Matilla A, García-Pagán JC, Lampreave JL, Piera C, Abraldes JG, De Diego A, Albillos A, Bosch J. Randomized comparison of long-term carvedilol and propranolol administration in the treatment of portal hypertension in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1367-1373 [PMID: 12447861]
58 **Tripathi D**, Ferguson JW, Kochar N, Leithead JA, Therapondos G, McAvoy NC, Stanley AJ, Forrest EH, Hislop WS, Mills PR, Hayes PC. Randomized controlled trial of carvedilol versus variceal band ligation for the prevention of the first variceal bleed. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 825-833 [PMID: 19610055 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23045]
59 **Pérez-Paramo M**, Muñoz J, Albillos A, Freile I, Portero F, Santos M, Ortiz-Berrocal J. Effect of propranolol on the factors promoting bacterial translocation in cirrhotic rats with ascites. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 43-48 [PMID: 10613726]

60 **Senzolo M**, Cholongitas E, Burra P, Leandro G, Thalheimer U, Patch D, Burroughs AK. beta-Blockers protect against spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in cirrhotic patients: a meta-analysis. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 1189-1193 [PMID: 19508620 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2009.02038]

61 **Reiberger T**, Ferlitsch A, Payer BA, Mandorfer M, Heinisch BB, Hayden H, Lammert F, Trauner M, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Vogelsang H. Non-selective betablocker therapy decreases intestinal permeability and serum levels of LBP and IL-6 in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 911-921 [PMID: 23262249 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.12.011]

62 **Tackey E**, Lipsky PE, Illei GG. Rationale for interleukin-6 blockade in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Lupus* 2004; **13**: 339-343 [PMID: 15230289]

63 **Nishimoto N**. Interleukin-6 in rheumatoid arthritis. *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 2006; **18**: 277-281 [PMID: 16582692]

64 **Idéo G**, Bellati G, Fesce E, Grimoldi D. Nadolol can prevent the first gastrointestinal bleeding in cirrhotics: a prospective, randomized study. *Hepatology* 1988; **8**: 6-9 [PMID: 3276591]

65 **Lebrec D**, Poynard T, Capron JP, Hillon P, Geoffroy P, Roulot D, Chaput JC, Rueff B, Benhamou JP. Nadolol for prophylaxis of gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis. A randomized trial. *J Hepatol* 1988; **7**: 118-125 [PMID: 3053888]

66 **Cheng JW**, Zhu L, Gu MJ, Song ZM. Meta analysis of propranolol effects on gastrointestinal hemorrhage in cirrhotic patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 1836-1839 [PMID: 12918133]

67 **Tripathi D**, Stanley AJ, Hayes PC, Patch D, Millson C, Mehrzad H, Austin A, Ferguson JW, Olliff SP, Hudson M, Christie JM. UK guidelines on the management of variceal haemorrhage in cirrhotic patients. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1680-1704 [PMID: 25887380 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309262]

68 **Calés P**, Oberti F, Payen JL, Naveau S, Guyader D, Blanc P, Abergel A, Bichard P, Raymond JM, Canva-Delcambre V, Vetter D, Valla D, Beauchant M, Hadengue A, Champigneulle B, Pascal JP, Poynard T, Lebrec D. Lack of effect of propranolol in the prevention of large oesophageal varices in patients with cirrhosis: a randomized trial. French-Speaking Club for the Study of Portal Hypertension. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **11**: 741-745 [PMID: 10445794]

69 **Merkel C**, Marin R, Angeli P, Zanella P, Felder M, Bernardinello E, Cavallarin G, Bolognesi M, Donada C, Bellini B, Torboli P, Gatta A. A placebo-controlled clinical trial of nadolol in the prophylaxis of growth of small esophageal varices in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 476-484 [PMID: 15300580]

70 **Plevris JN**, Elliot R, Mills PR, Hislop WS, Davies JM, Bouchier IA, Hayes PC. Effect of propranolol on prevention of first variceal bleed and survival in patients with chronic liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1994; **8**: 63-70 [PMID: 8186348]

71 **Qi XS**, Bao YX, Bai M, Xu WD, Dai JN, Guo XZ. Nonselective beta-blockers in cirrhotic patients with no or small varices: A meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 3100-3108 [PMID: 25780311 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i10.3100]

72 **Merkel C**, Marin R, Enzo E, Donada C, Cavallarin G, Torboli P, Amodio P, Sebastianelli G, Sacerdoti D, Felder M, Mazzaro C, Beltrame P, Gatta A. Randomised trial of nadolol alone or with isosorbide mononitrate for primary prophylaxis of variceal bleeding in cirrhosis. Gruppo-Triveneto per L'ipertensione portale (GTIP) *Lancet* 1996; **348**: 1677-1681 [PMID: 8973428]

73 **García-Pagán JC**, Morillas R, Bañares R, Albillos A, Villanueva C, Vila C, Genescà J, Jimenez M, Rodriguez M, Calleja JL, Balanzó J, García-Durán F, Planas R, Bosch J. Propranolol plus placebo versus propranolol plus isosorbide-5-mononitrate in the prevention of a first variceal bleed: a double-blind RCT. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1260-1266 [PMID: 12774003]

74 **Burroughs AK**, Jenkins WJ, Sherlock S, Dunk A, Walt RP, Osuafor TO, Mackie S, Dick R. Controlled trial of propranolol for the prevention of recurrent variceal hemorrhage in patients with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 1983; **309**: 1539-1542 [PMID: 6361553]

75 **D'Amico G**, Pagliaro L, Bosch J. The treatment of portal hypertension: a meta-analytic review. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 332-354 [PMID: 7601427]

76 **Bernard B**, Lebrec D, Mathurin P, Opolon P, Poynard T. Beta-adrenergic antagonists in the prevention of gastrointestinal rebleeding in patients with cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 63-70 [PMID: 8985266]

77 **Gatta A**, Merkel C, Sacerdoti D, Bolognesi M, Caregaro L, Zuin R, Angeli P, Ruol A. Nadolol for prevention of variceal rebleeding in cirrhosis: a controlled clinical trial. *Digestion* 1987; **37**: 22-28 [PMID: 3301478]

78 **D'Amico G**, Pagliaro L, Bosch J. Pharmacological treatment of portal hypertension: an evidence-based approach. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 475-505 [PMID: 10643630]

79 **Gournay J**, Masliah C, Martin T, Perrin D, Galmiche JP. Isosorbide mononitrate and propranolol compared with propranolol alone for the prevention of variceal rebleeding. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 1239-1245 [PMID: 10827148]

80 **Gluud LL**, Langholz E, Krag A. Meta-analysis: isosorbide-mononitrate alone or with either beta-blockers or endoscopic therapy for the management of oesophageal varices. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **32**: 859-871 [PMID: 20839387]

81 **Gonzalez R**, Zamora J, Gomez-Camarero J, Molinero LM, Bañares R, Albillos A. Meta-analysis: Combination endoscopic and drug therapy to prevent variceal rebleeding in cirrhosis. *Ann Intern Med* 2008; **149**: 109-122 [PMID: 18626050]

82 **Funakoshi N**, Ségalas-Largey F, Duny Y, Oberti F, Valats JC, Bismuth M, Daurès JP, Blanc P. Benefit of combination β-blocker and endoscopic treatment to prevent variceal rebleeding: a meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5982-5992 [PMID: 21157975 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i47.5982]

83 **Lo GH**, Lai KH, Cheng JS, Chen MH, Huang HC, Hsu PI, Lin CK. Endoscopic variceal ligation plus nadolol and sucralfate compared with ligation alone for the prevention of variceal rebleeding: a prospective, randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 461-465 [PMID: 10960435]

84 **Puente A**, Hernández-Gea V, Graupera I, Roque M, Colomo A, Poca M, Aracil C, Gich I, Guarner C, Villanueva C. Drugs plus ligation to prevent rebleeding in cirrhosis: an updated systematic review. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 823-833 [PMID: 24373180 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12452]

85 **Stanley AJ,** Dickson S, Hayes PC, Forrest EH, Mills PR, Tripathi D, Leithead JA, MacBeth K, Smith L, Gaya DR, Suzuki H, Young D. Multicentre randomised controlled study comparing carvedilol with variceal band ligation in the prevention of variceal rebleeding. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 1014-1019 [PMID24953021 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.06.015]

86 **Sarin SK**, Lahoti D, Saxena SP, Murthy NS, Makwana UK. Prevalence, classification and natural history of gastric varices: a long-term follow-up study in 568 portal hypertension patients. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 1343-1349 [PMID: 1446890]

87 **Mishra SR**, Chander Sharma B, Kumar A, Sarin SK. Endoscopic cyanoacrylate injection versus beta-blocker for secondary prophylaxis of gastric variceal bleed: a randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 729-735 [PMID: 20551457 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.192039]

88 **Hung HH**, Chang CJ, Hou MC, Liao WC, Chan CC, Huang HC, Lin HC, Lee FY, Lee SD. Efficacy of non-selective β-blockers as adjunct to endoscopic prophylactic treatment for gastric variceal bleeding: a randomized controlled trial. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 1025-1032 [PMID: 22266602 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.12.02]

89 **Sersté T**, Francoz C, Durand F, Rautou PE, Melot C, Valla D, Moreau R, Lebrec D. Beta-blockers cause paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a cross-over study. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 794-799 [PMID: 21354230 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.01.034]

90 **Mandorfer M**, Bota S, Schwabl P, Bucsics T, Pfisterer N, Kruzik M, Hagmann M, Blacky A, Ferlitsch A, Sieghart W, Trauner M, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Reiberger T. Nonselective β blockers increase risk for hepatorenal syndrome and death in patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 1680-90.e1 [PMID: 24631577 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.03.005]

91 **Hernández-Gea V**, Aracil C, Colomo A, Garupera I, Poca M, Torras X, Miñana J, Guarner C, Villanueva C. Development of ascites in compensated cirrhosis with severe portal hypertension treated with β-blockers. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 418-427 [PMID: 22334252 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.456]

92 **Murray JF**, Dawson AM, Sherlock S. Circulatory changes in chronic liver disease. *Am J Med* 1958; **24**: 358-367 [PMID: 13520736]

93 **Llach J**, Ginès P, Arroyo V, Rimola A, Titó L, Badalamenti S, Jiménez W, Gaya J, Rivera F, Rodés J. Prognostic value of arterial pressure, endogenous vasoactive systems, and renal function in cirrhotic patients admitted to the hospital for the treatment of ascites. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 482-487 [PMID: 3335320]

94 **Arroyo V**, Terra C, Ginès P. Advances in the pathogenesis and treatment of type-1 and type-2 hepatorenal syndrome. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 935-946 [PMID: 17391801]

95 **Li J**, Niu JZ, Wang JF, Li Y, Tao XH. Pathological mechanisms of alcohol-induced hepatic portal hypertension in early stage fibrosis rat model. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 6483-6488 [PMID: 16425420]

96 **Cirera I**, Bauer TM, Navasa M, Vila J, Grande L, Taurá P, Fuster J, García-Valdecasas JC, Lacy A, Suárez MJ, Rimola A, Rodés J. Bacterial translocation of enteric organisms in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 32-37 [PMID: 11211904]

97 **Albillos A**, de la Hera A, González M, Moya JL, Calleja JL, Monserrat J, Ruiz-del-Arbol L, Alvarez-Mon M. Increased lipopolysaccharide binding protein in cirrhotic patients with marked immune and hemodynamic derangement. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 208-217 [PMID: 12500206]

98 **Robins A**, Bowden A, Watson W, Smith F, Gelson W, Griffiths W. Beta-blockers in cirrhosis patients with refractory ascites. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 2054-2055 [PMID: 23929786 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26676]

99 **Kimer N**, Feineis M, Møller S, Bendtsen F. Beta-blockers in cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a retrospective cohort study and review of the literature. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 129-137 [PMID: 25113796 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.948053]

100 **Chirapongsathorn S**, Valentin N, Alah-dab F, Krittanawong C, Erwin PJ, Murah MH, Kamanth PS. Effect of Beta-Blockers on the survival in patients with cirrhosis and ascites: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 94A

101 **Bossen L**, Krag A, Vilstrup H, Watson H, Jespen P. Non-selective β-blockers do not affect mortality in cirrhosis patients with ascites: Post hoc analysis of three RCTs with 1189 patients. *Hepatology* 2015; Epub ahead of print [DOI: 10.1002/hep.28352]

102 **Fernández J**, Navasa M, Planas R, Montoliu S, Monfort D, Soriano G, Vila C, Pardo A, Quintero E, Vargas V, Such J, Ginès P, Arroyo V. Primary prophylaxis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis delays hepatorenal syndrome and improves survival in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 818-824 [PMID: 17854593]

103 **Genesca J,** Marti R, Rojo F, Campos F, Peribáñez V, Gónzalez A, Castells L, Ruiz-Marcellán C, Margarit C, Esteban R, Guardia J, Segura R Increased tumour necrosis factor alpha production in mesenteric lymph nodes of cirrhotic patients with ascites. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1054-1059

104 **Qi XS**, Bai M, Fan DM. Nonselective β-blockers may induce development of portal vein thrombosis in cirrhosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 11463-11466 [PMID: 25170238 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i32.11463]

105 **Pellicini AM**, D'Ambrosio C, Barbaro G, Villani R, Guarascio P, Fondacaro L, Cortese A, Atzori M, Regine G, Adami L, Santoro R, Ettorre GM, Andreoli A. Clinical and genetic factors associated to development of portal vein thrombosis in cirrhotic patients without hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: S77 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(11)60182-7]

106 **Gomez MG**, Llop E, Puente A, de la Revilla J, Fernandez-Carillo C, Pons F, Martinez JL, Fernandez M, Trapero M, Crespo J, Calleja JL. Use of betablockers, previous hepatic encephalopathy and low albumin levels as risk factors of portal vein thrombosis in a cohort of cirrhotic patients. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 947A [DOI: 10.1002/hep.28231]

107 Reliability of endoscopy in the assessment of variceal features. The Italian Liver Cirrhosis Project. *J Hepatol* 1987; **4**: 93-98 [PMID: 3494762]

108 **Sinagra E**, Perricone G, D'Amico M, Tinè F, D'Amico G. Systematic review with meta-analysis: the haemodynamic effects of carvedilol compared with propranolol for portal hypertension in cirrhosis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 557-568 [PMID: 24461301 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12634]

109 **Helmy H,** Zaghla HE, Abdel-Razek W, Abbasy M, Elzohry HA, Badra GA. Propanolol for prevention of recurrence of varices after endoscopic eradication. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 575A [DOI: 10.1002/hep.28217]

110 **Seki E,** De Mincis S, Osterreicher CH, Kluwe J, Osawa Y, Brenner DA, Schwabe RF. TLR4 enhances TGF-beta signalling and hepatic fibrosis. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 1324-1332 [PMID: 17952090]

111 **Grivennikov SI**, Greten FR, Karin M. Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. *Cell* 2010; **140**: 883-899 [PMID: 20303878 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.01.025]

112 **Ji Y**, Chen S, Xiao X, Zheng S, Li K. β-blockers: a novel class of antitumor agents. *Onco Targets Ther* 2012; **5**: 391-401 [PMID: 23226026 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S38403]

113 **Lamy S**, Lachambre MP, Lord-Dufour S, Béliveau R. Propranolol suppresses angiogenesis in vitro: inhibition of proliferation, migration, and differentiation of endothelial cells. *Vascul Pharmacol* 2010; **53**: 200-208 [PMID: 20732454 DOI: 10.1016/j.vph.2010.08.0022010; 53: 200-8]

114 **Schuller HM**, Al-Wadei HA.Beta-adrenergic signaling in the development and progression of pulmonary and pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Curr Cancer Ther Rev* 2012; **8**: 116-127 [PMID: 23807873]

115 **Pasquier E**, Street J, Pouchy C, Carre M, Gifford AJ, Murray J, Norris MD, Trahair T, Andre N, Kavallaris M. β-blockers increase response to chemotherapy via direct antitumour and anti-angiogenic mechanisms in neuroblastoma. *Br J Cancer* 2013; **108**: 2485-2494 [PMID: 23695022 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2013.205]

116 **Thiele M**, Albillos A, Abazi R, Wiest R, Gluud LL, Krag A. Non-selective beta-blockers may reduce risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 2009-2016 [PMID: 25581713 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12782]

117 **Giannelli V**, Roux O, Rautou PE, Weiss E, Moreau R, Lebrec D, Durand F, Francoz DC. Deleterious effect of beta-blockers in cirrhotic patients with refractory ascites: potential role of myocardial dysfunction. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 93A

118 **Wong F,** O'Leary JG, Reddy KR, Garcia-Tsao G, Biggins SW, Falon MB, Tandon P, Subramanian RM, Maliakkal B, Thuluvath PJ, Vargas HE, Kamanth PS, Thacker L, Bajaj JS, Baja JS. The association of non-selective beta-blocker use and acute kidney injury in patients with decompensated cirrhosis admitted into hospital - A study of from the North American Consortium for the Study of End Stage Liver Disease (NACSLED). *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 66A [DOI: 10.1002/hep.28160]

P- Reviewer: Chiang TA, Dehpour AR, Sodergren MH
S- Editor: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Li D

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.32

World J Pharmacol 2016 March 9; 5(1): 32-43
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

REVIEW

Allosteric modulation of cholinergic system: Potential approach to treating cognitive deficits of schizophrenia

Shaun Hopper, Madhara Udawela, Elizabeth Scarr, Brian Dean

Shaun Hopper, Madhara Udawela, Elizabeth Scarr, Brian Dean, the Florey Institute of Neuroscience and Mental Health, the University of Melbourne, Melbourne, Victoria 3052, Australia

Elizabeth Scarr, Brian Dean, Department of Psychiatry, the University of Melbourne, Melbourne, Victoria 3052, Australia

Author contributions: Hopper S, Udawela M, Scarr E and Dean B contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no competing financial interests in relation to the work described in this paper. The authors report no competing interests.

Correspondence to: Shaun Hopper, MSc, the Florey Institute of Neuroscience and Mental Health, the University of Melbourne, Gate 11 Royal Parade, Melbourne, Victoria 3052, Australia. shaun.hopper@florey.edu.au
Telephone: +61-90-356475

Received: September 19, 2015
Peer-review started: September 22, 2015
First decision: October 30, 2015
Revised: November 26, 2015
Accepted: December 29, 2015
Article in press: January 4, 2016
Published online: March 9, 2016

Abstract

Schizophrenia is a psychiatric disorder affecting approximately 1% of the population worldwide and is characterised by the presence of positive and negative symptoms and cognitive deficits. Whilst current therapeutics ameliorate positive symptoms, they are largely ineffective in improving negative symptoms and cognitive deficits. The cholinergic neurotransmitter system heavily influences cognitive function and there is evidence that implicates disruption of the central cholinergic system in schizophrenia. Historically, targeting the cholinergic system has been impeded by poor selectivity leading to intolerable side effects warranting the need to develop more targeted therapeutic compounds. In this review we will summarise evidence supporting the roles of the cholinergic system, particularly the muscarinic M_1 receptor, in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia and discuss the potential of a promising new class of candidate compounds, allosteric ligands, for addressing the difficulties involved in targeting this system. The body of evidence presented here highlights the dysfunction of the cholinergic system in schizophrenia and that targeting this system by taking advantage of allosteric ligands is having clinically meaningful effect on cognitive deficits.

Key words: Central nervous system; Antipsychotic; Allosteric; Cholinergic; Schizophrenia; Mutagenesis; Cognition; Muscarinic

Core tip: Schizophrenia is a psychiatric disorder affecting approximately 1% of the world population. Current treatments inadequately redress the cognitive impairments associated with the disease. In light of that we discuss the role of the cholinergic system, in particular the muscarinic M_1 receptor, in schizophrenia and cognition and how allosteric compounds are being developed to address this undertreated aspect of the disease. We also discuss and compile mutagenesis studies of the muscarinic M_1 receptor and how they relate to allosteric binding and function.

Hopper S, Udawela M, Scarr E, Dean B. Allosteric modulation

of cholinergic system: Potential approach to treating cognitive deficits of schizophrenia. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(1): 32-43 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i1/32.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.32

INTRODUCTION

Cognitive impairment is associated with multiple disease states and usually has a big impact on quality of life. Schizophrenia is a psychiatric disorder with a predominant age of onset from late teens to early adulthood that affects approximately 1% of the world population. It is diagnosed by the presence of what are characterised as positive and negative symptoms and cognitive deficits. Unlike neurological disorders no major lesion was apparent in the central nervous system (CNS) from subjects with schizophrenia[1] and therefore many of the hypotheses as to its cause have been based on the actions of drugs that either worsen or ameliorate the symptoms of the disorder.

The dopamine hypothesis

With the serendipitous discovery that chlorpromazine had unexpected therapeutic benefit when given to psychotic individuals there was a significant effort to develop a range of what became known as first generation neuroleptic drugs[2]. Subsequently, it was determined that the ability of these drugs to reduce the severity of positive symptoms in some people with schizophrenia was directly related to the ability of first generation neuroleptic drugs to act as antagonists at the dopamine D2 receptor[3]. Understanding this mechanism led to the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia which states hyperactivity of the dopamine neurotransmitter system contributes to the pathophysiology of schizophrenia (reviewed in[4]).

The dopamine hypothesis was the first attempt to encapsulate the biological mechanisms underpinning schizophrenia. This hypothesis grew from an understanding that the early antipsychotics block the dopamine D2 receptor and that drugs which increase CNS dopamine function cause or worsen psychosis. The original dopamine hypothesis proposed that widespread hyperactivity of the dopamine system within the brain was the cause of psychotic symptoms but the hypothesis was subsequently refined to propose that cortical hypo-activity in addition to subcortical hyper-activity of dopamine contributed to both the psychotic and other symptoms associated with schizophrenia (reviewed in[5]). Inconsistent reports of differences in dopamine receptor levels, metabolic enzymes[6], and imaging studies have led to questioning of the dopamine hypothesis[7,8] and investigation into other possible mechanisms of disease aetiology. However, a neuroimaging report of increased amphetamine-induced dopamine release in the striatum of subjects with schizophrenia appears to reinforce a role for dopamine in the aetiology of the disorder (reviewed in[9]).

The serotonin hypothesis

Clozapine is the archetypal drug that led to the development of a family of drugs termed second-generation neuroleptics[10]. Whilst the second-generation drugs were developed to bind to some of the receptors targeted by clozapine it is notable that none of these drugs have achieved the extended therapeutic reach of clozapine such as improving the cognitive deficits[11]. An early second generation neuroleptic drug, risperidone, was suggested to have significant benefits compared to first generation neuroleptic drugs[12] which were presumed to be due, at least in part, to its ability to antagonise the serotonin 2A receptor[13]. The clinical benefit obtained by risperidone, added to the observation that drugs such as lysergic acid diethylamide could cause psychotic symptoms by stimulating the serotonergic system[14], became the evidence to support the serotonin hypothesis of schizophrenia.

Initial interest in the serotonergic system stems from the observation that drugs affecting serotonin receptors produce psychotomimetic effects[15] and the discovery that second generation neuroleptics bind to various serotonin receptors[16,17]. These observations have led to investigation of the serotonin system both post-mortem and *in vivo*; a recent meta-analysis[18] demonstrated a moderately higher level of the serotonin receptor subtype 5-HT_{1A} and a substantially lower levels of the 5-HT_{2A} receptor subtype in the prefrontal cortex of post-mortem subjects with schizophrenia.

The glutamate hypothesis

The glutamate hypothesis is somewhat unique as it is founded in the observation that phencyclidine could cause a broad range of symptoms in normal individuals[19] and exacerbate psychotic symptoms in patients with schizophrenia[20] but no drug targeting the glutamatergic system has proved useful in treating the disorder[21]. Further investigation has revealed elevated glutamate activity particularly in the medial prefrontal cortex and basal ganglia of un-medicated and first episode patients, demonstrated by magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies (reviewed in[22]). Of studies in post-mortem brain tissue, the most robust finding has been widespread differences in glutamatergic pyramidal neuron morphology, particularly lower numbers[23] and lengths of dendrites[24] and lower numbers of dendritic spines[25] in deep cortical layer Ⅲ of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. There have also been mixed reports of differences in mRNA and protein levels of receptor subunits, transporters, and synthesis enzymes (post-mortem glutamatergic differences in schizophrenia reviewed in[26]).

The cholinergic hypothesis

Preceding all of these neurotransmitter hypotheses was the cholinergic hypothesis which was founded on the observation that some subjects with schizophrenia had remission or an improvement in symptom severity

after coma induced by a dose of acetylcholine (ACh)[27]. Since those early experiments components of the cholinergic system, the muscarinic receptors, have been targeted by drugs such as clozapine and olanzapine that reduce the symptoms of schizophrenia[28] and drugs such as benzatropine which were used to control the extrapyramidal side effects associated with treating with first generation antipsychotic drugs[29]. Whilst these neuropsychopharmacological findings are important to consideration of the role of the cholinergic system in schizophrenia, other studies which have advanced our understanding of the cholinergic system and how it may be affected in the disorder have been important in refining the cholinergic hypotheses of schizophrenia.

The cholinergic system consists of several distinct pathways; the most well studied being the pathway that projects from the basal forebrain to most of the CNS[30]. This pathway extensively modulates the dopamine system by affecting striatal dopamine release[31]; the glutamate system by potentiating NMDA receptors[32]; and the serotonergic system *via* projections to the dorsal raphe nucleus where ACh inhibits the release of serotonin[33] (cholinergic interactions in schizophrenia reviewed in[34]). Whilst the modulatory interactions of the cholinergic system with other neurotransmitter systems provide mechanisms which can implicate that system in schizophrenia there are also several lines of evidence to suggest that the cortical muscarinic M_1 receptor, a component of the cholinergic system, is particularly implicated in the pathophysiology of schizophrenia.

Although there have been several reviews discussing the cholinergic system and its role in schizophrenia[35,36], there have recently been some exciting advances in developing drugs to target the cholinergic system[37-39] that make a review of the area timely. This is particularly the case because the cognitive deficits of schizophrenia are largely non-responsive to current drug treatments[40] whereas preliminary data suggest that the new drugs targeting the cholinergic system will improve cognition[41]. Cognitive deficits are a core feature of schizophrenia and are made up of deficits in the domains of speed of processing, attention/vigilance, working memory, verbal learning and memory, visual learning and memory, reasoning and problem solving, and social cognition (reviewed in[42]). The impact of these deficits in people with schizophrenia is now considered the most debilitating of all the symptom domains associated with the disorder. Therefore, this review will first summarize the cholinergic system, then briefly review evidence supporting its role, particularly the muscarinic M_1 receptor, in cognition and the pathophysiology of schizophrenia and finally discuss the potential of a promising new class of candidate compounds and how they target the muscarinic M_1 receptor for addressing the difficulties involved in targeting this system.

OVERVIEW OF THE CHOLINERGIC SYSTEM

ACh is a modulatory neurotransmitter[43] in the CNS and peripheral autonomic and somatic nervous systems. It is essential to the function of all branches of the peripheral nervous system[44] and has been associated with a large number of cognitive processes in the CNS. Two classes of integral membrane receptor mediate signal transmission: The ionotropic nicotinic receptors (nAChR), and the metabotropic muscarinic receptors.

Within the CNS, cholinergic neurons are predominantly located in the basal forebrain as cortical projection neurons (reviewed in[45]) and striatal interneurons (Figure 1). The projection neurons arise from four cell groups (Ch1-4) in the basal forebrain[46] and from the pedunculopontine-lateral dorsal tegmental area in the brainstem. These cell groups are not exclusively composed of cholinergic neurons, but contain a diverse mix of other neurotransmitter systems including GABAergic, peptide transmitter, and catecholaminergic neurons. These projection neurons modulate all regions of cortex including the hippocampal formation[46]. In addition to the projection nuclei of the basal forebrain, striatal cholinergic interneurons interact heavily with the dopaminergic projections from the substantia nigra pars compacta and the ventral tegmental area (VTA)[47] (The human cholinergic brain architecture is extensively reviewed in[30]).

ACh acts in part *via* the family of five muscarinic (M_{1-5}) receptors; they have a differential expression pattern throughout the human CNS[48]. Point mutation and other studies suggest that the structural position of the muscarinic receptor transmembrane domains relative to one another affect the differential binding specificity of ligands to these receptors[49,50]. Significantly, the orthosteric site on the five muscarinic receptors is highly conserved and this has presented a challenge to the development of receptor-specific drugs.

Muscarinic M_1 receptors

Of the five muscarinic receptors, the muscarinic M_1 receptor is the predominant muscarinic receptor in all cortical areas[48] where it is located on excitatory neurons to modulate their firing, for example, by potentiating NMDA receptors[32] and at cholinergic synapses[51]. Mouse knockout and knock down studies have elucidated some of its roles in CNS function. For example, in muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice, mitogen activated protein kinase (MAPK) signalling is impaired in cortical neuronal cultures[52] and hippocampal slices[53]. The role of MAPK in hippocampal long term potentiation[54] and neuronal plasticity[55] demonstrate a potential mechanism by which muscarinic M_1 receptors modulate learning and memory. Gamma oscillations (20-80 Hz) of neuronal firing patterns are associated with memory[56], hippocampal gamma oscillations induced by muscarine, a muscarinic agonist, but not those induced by kainite, a glutamatergic kainite receptor agonist, are completely absent from muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice[57]. Another study reported that muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice had fewer and shorter dendrites and disrupted cortical tonotopic maps in the auditory cortex[58]. Additionally,

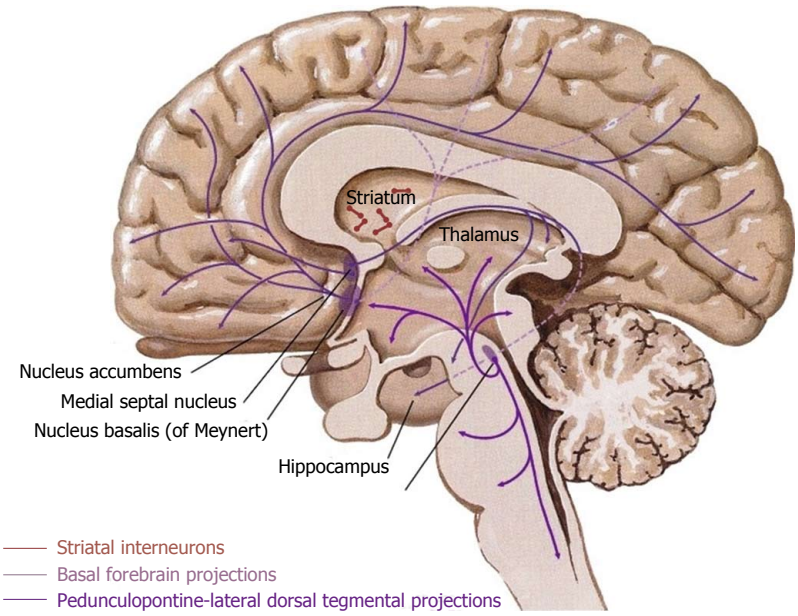


Figure 1 Schematic diagram of the human cholinergic pathways. Adapted from[112].

muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice had impaired experience dependent plasticity in the auditory cortex[59], implicating the muscarinic M_1 receptor in auditory cortical organisation, sensory processing, and learning. Additionally, muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice are deficient in working memory and memory consolidation processes where the hippocampus and cerebral cortex interact[60]. These studies together implicate muscarinic M_1 receptors in various aspects of learning and memory.

In addition to their cognitive effects, muscarinic M_1 receptors are implicated in the response to a number of brain-penetrant drugs in mice. Muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice are highly resistant to seizures induced by pilocarpine, a muscarinic agonist, which does not supress the voltage dependent K^+ M current in these animals. Conversely, muscarinic M_{2-4} receptor knockout mice display wild-type seizure response and M current suppression when administered pilocarpine[61]. As M current suppression is considered the mechanism by which pilocarpine seizures are produced[62], the muscarinic M_1 receptors mediate this drug induced seizure response by modulating M currents in sympathetic neurons[61]. Muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice displayed an elevated striatal level of extracellular dopamine and increased locomotor activity, which neuroleptic treatment attenuated[63]. In addition, the mice had an increased sensitivity to amphetamine administration, in both the locomotor response and striatal dopamine levels[63] demonstrating an interaction between the cholinergic and dopaminergic systems. This interaction is supported by the report of an increase in morphine-induced analgesia and lower rates of self-administration of morphine and cocaine in muscarinic M_1 receptor knockout mice[64]. Taken together, these studies implicate the muscarinic M_1 receptor in the both the response to these drugs and as a mechanism by which the cholinergic system interacts with the dopamine reward pathway.

THE CHOLINERGIC SYSTEM IN THE PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF SCHIZOPHRENIA

The cholinergic system's role in schizophrenia is supported by research involving neuropsychopharmacological agents, post-mortem brain tissue, and neuroleptic drug treatments. In addition to the these three areas of research, a landmark single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) study showed widespread lower levels of muscarinic receptor binding in the cerebral cortex in patients with schizophrenia who were medication free compared to healthy control subjects[65].

Neuropsychopharmacology

Several neuropsychopharmacological studies provide evidence to support the role of muscarinic receptors in schizophrenia. Administering a muscarinic antagonist, scopolamine, to healthy control subjects produced deficits in spatial and working memory as well as sustained visual attention[66]. In another report this group demonstrated that scopolamine produced deficits in spatial and object working memory using the n-back paradigm[67], which is used to assess working memory function in patients with schizophrenia. Additionally, acute administration of scopolamine to healthy subjects produced deficits in maintenance of working memory[68]. Another study demonstrated higher doses of scopolamine as well as atropine and Ditran, two other muscarinic antagonists, produced hallucination, and delirium in addition to cognitive deficits in healthy

Table 1 Muscarinic receptors in post-mortem studies

Ref.	Receptor Type		Regions	Results
	Protein	mRNA		
[114]	M_1/M_4		CPu	Lower binding
[115]	M_2/M_4		CPu	Lower binding
[116]		M_1 M_2	CPu	M_1 no difference; M_2 below sensitivity in both SCZ and HC
[117]	M_1/M_4		PFC	Lower binding
[76]	M_1/M_4	M_1 M_4	DLPFC; PCx	Lower binding and M_1 mRNA levels in DLPFC; no difference in binding, lower M_1 and M_4 mRNA levels in PCx
[118]		M_1	PMC	Lower levels
[119]	M_1/M_4		ACC	Lower binding
[120]	M_2/M_4		ACC	No difference
[121]	M_1/M_4 M_2/M_4		STG	Lower M_1/M_4 binding non-significant; lower M_2/M_4 binding
[77]	M_2 M_3	M_2 M_3	DLPFC; PCx	M_2 and M_3 binding and M_3 mRNA no difference; M_2 mRNA below sensitivity in both SCZ and HC
[122]	M_1/M_4	M_1 M_4	Hipp	Lower binding; lower M_4 mRNA no difference in M_1 mRNA levels
[123]	M_1/M_4 M_3		PMC	Lower M_1/M_4 binding; no difference in M_3 binding
[78]	M_1		DLPFC	Lower binding in subset of SCZ subjects
[81]	M_1 M_3	M_1 M_3 M_4	PMC	Lower M_1 binding in subset of SCZ subjects; no difference in mRNA levels or M_3 binding
[82]	M_1		DLPFC; ACC; BrA	Lower binding in subset of SCZ subjects

"/" Indicates that the radioligand used in the study binds both receptor types listed. CPu: Caudate-putamen; SCZ: Subjects with schizophrenia; HC: Non-psychiatric healthy control; PFC: Prefrontal cortex; DLPFC: Dorsolateral prefrontal cortex; PCx: Parietal cortex; PMC: Premotor cortex; ACC: Anterior cingulate cortex; STG: Superior temporal gyrus; Hipp: Hippocampus; BrA: Broca's area.

control subjects[69]. Thus blocking muscarinic recptor activity mimics both positive and cognitive symptoms observed in patients with schizophrenia.

Sleep disturbances, including impaired sleep continuity, abnormal REM latency[70] and decreased slow wave sleep[71] observed in patients with schizophrenia have been associated with impaired sleep dependent memory consolidation, as well as negative symptom severity[71]. Administration of cholinergic agonists to healthy volunteers causes shortening of REM latency during sleep[72,73] and altered REM latency in a subset of patients with schizophrenia more severely than healthy control subjects[74]. These findings demonstrate that pharmacological manipulation of the cholinergic system can mimic and worsen the sleep disturbances observed in patients with schizophrenia. These studies add support to the body of evidence implicating the cholinergic system in the pathology of schizophrenia.

Post mortem studies

A role for the muscarinic M_1 receptor in schizophrenia is supported by a variety of post-mortem studies investigating radioligand binding and mRNA levels in multiple brain regions (Table 1), which report a decrease in muscarinic M_1/M_4 receptor binding and muscarinic M_1 receptor mRNA levels in multiple brain regions (reviewed in[75]). Notably, we reported a decrease in muscarinic M_1[76], but not M_2, M_3[77] or M_4[76] receptor protein in the cortex of subjects who had schizophrenia confirming that the M_1 receptor is selectively decreased in people with the disorder. More recently, we[78] reported lower binding of [^{3}H]pirenzepine ([^{3}H]PRZ), a muscarinic M_1/M_4 receptor selective antagonist, in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortices from people with schizophrenia to be limited to a subset (approximately 25%) of subjects; these subjects had 75% lower binding to muscarinic receptors in Brodmann area (BA) 9 when compared to both healthy control subjects and other subjects with schizophrenia. These data underpin the proposal of a subgroup within schizophrenia that have a muscarinic receptor deficit schizophrenia (MRDS). This hypothesis is pertinent to the growing acceptance that schizophrenia is a syndrome of disorders that may well have differing aetiologies[79].

Although [^{3}H]PRZ binds to both muscarinic M_1 and M_4 receptors, its selectivity for the muscarinic M_1 receptor was increased under the conditions used for the study that identified MRDS[80]. Furthermore, we previously showed that muscarinic M_1, but not M_4, receptor mRNA and [^{3}H]PRZ binding levels were significantly lower in BA 9 in subjects with schizophrenia[76]. These data, combined with the high abundance of muscarinic M_1 receptors relative to the other muscarinic receptor types within the cerebral cortex[48], strongly implicates muscarinic M_1 receptors in the pathophysiology of the MRDS group. More recent work has demonstrated lower [^{3}H]PRZ binding in BAs 6, 10, 24, 44 and 46 in the same cohort[81,82]; these findings are consistent with the widespread loss of cortical muscarinic receptors in people with schizophrenia reported in the SPECT study[83].

Neuroleptic drug treatment

Traditional antipsychotic therapies achieve their action by blockade of central dopamine D2 receptors (reviewed in[4]); unfortunately, these drugs can cause extrapyramidal side effects (EPS) such as tremors and dyskinesia similar to those seen in people with Parkinson's disease[84]. Adjunctive anti-cholinergic agents are often used to combat EPS, due to the interaction between the dopaminergic and cholinergic systems in the basal ganglia, particularly the VTA[85]. The non-specific muscarinic antagonist procyclidine, however, exacerbated positive symptoms in patients with schizophrenia treated

with the antipsychotic flupentixol[86], while the muscarinic M_1 preferring antagonist biperiden worsened positive symptoms and ameliorated the negative symptoms in patients who were otherwise drug free for at least 2 wk[87]. Patients with schizophrenia who were taking benzatropine, a muscarinic antagonist, as an adjunctive therapy had impaired semantic organisation[88]. These studies show that pharmacological interventions affecting the central cholinergic tone in patients with schizophrenia has a complex effect on symptomatology, and that more specific modulation of the system may be beneficial for ameliorating the symptoms of the disorder.

Xanomeline: A proof of principle drug trial in schizophrenia

A small, double-blind, placebo controlled trial of an agonist selective for the muscarinic M_1 and M_4 receptors, xanomeline, was conducted in a cohort of treatment resistant schizophrenia patients[39]. The xanomeline treated group showed significant improvement in both positive and negative symptoms as measured using the positive and negative syndrome scale and the brief psychiatric rating scale as well as improvements in a battery of cognitive tests, particularly in working memory and verbal and visual learning[39]. Unfortunately, peripheral adverse events were observed including vomiting, nausea and gastrointestinal distress similar to those observed in previous Alzheimer's disease trials[89,90]; this led to the discontinuation of xanomeline. This compound highlighted two important points regarding muscarinic receptors as drug targets. Firstly, its efficacy in the schizophrenia trial[39] supports the body of evidence suggesting that muscarinic receptors, particularly muscarinic M_1 and M_4 receptors, are viable targets for treatment of schizophrenia. Secondly, the problem of selectivity for specific muscarinic receptors. High selectivity for individual muscarinic receptors is difficult to achieve with orthosteric ligands, due to the high homology between their orthosteric binding pockets. The side effects observed in the xanomeline trials were considered to be the result of "off target" activation of muscarinic receptors, particularly muscarinic M_2 and M_3 receptors[89,90]. Clearly, there is a need for ligands that are more selective, both for drug development and investigating individual receptors both *in vivo* and *in vitro*; allosteric compounds present a possible solution.

RECEPTOR ALLOSTERISM

An allosteric site is a binding site on a receptor distinct from the orthosteric binding site of the endogenous ligand that can be activated by proteins or small molecules to elicit a biologic response (allosteric agonist) or modulate the response of an endogenous molecule, orthosteric agonist or orthosteric antagonist biding to the orthosteric site (allosteric modulator). Allosteric modulators increase [positive allosteric modulator (PAM)] or decrease [negative allosteric modulator (NAM)] the ability of orthosteric ligands to activate or inactivate the receptor. These terms describing allosterism are defined according to the guidelines set out by the International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology[91].

Characterisation of putative M_1 receptor allosteric site

In an attempt to better understand the muscarinic M_1 receptor and aid drug development, site-directed mutagenesis techniques have identified amino acid residues of the muscarinic M_1 receptor implicated in the binding of compounds to the orthosteric site, the allosteric site, and in the functional cooperativity between the orthosteric and allosteric sites. From these studies, the orthosteric site is considered to be a pocket deep in the transmembrane domains (TMs; reviewed in[92]). Recent X-ray crystallographic determination of the structures of the muscarinic M_2[93] and M_3[50] receptors has confirmed the orthosteric site is located in a pocket that forms a channel between the TMs for these receptors. The differential binding specificity of ligands to the different receptors is thought to relate to the structural position of the transmembrane domains relative to one another[49,50].

An early study characterising the allosteric site of the muscarinic M_1 receptor performed alanine scanning of the extracellular loop (ECL) amino acid residues conserved across the five muscarinic receptors. The authors found that the only residue to have any appreciable effect on the binding characteristics of gallamine (NAM) was Tyr400, found in the 3rd ECL, leading them to hypothesise that the allosteric site of gallamine is close in space to the orthosteric site[94]. More recently, other residues that are implicated in binding to the allosteric site (Figure 2A) and functional cooperativity between the allosteric and orthosteric sites (Figure 2B) of the muscarinic M_1 receptor were identified in the 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, and 7th TMs and the 2nd ECL[95,96]. Computer modelling of the residues identified in mutagenesis studies has predicted a putative binding site which is topographically distinct from the orthosteric site, mainly composed of residues from ECL2, TM Ⅱ, and TM Ⅶ[96]. Notably, these studies using 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-4-oxo-1, 4-dihydroquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (BQCA)[96] and a structural derivative of BQCA (benzoquinazolinone 12)[95] found that mutating the Tyr400 residue completely abolished binding to the allosteric site of the muscarinic M_1 receptor; in agreement with the study using gallamine. Interestingly, the residues implicated in allosteric binding to the muscarinic M_1 receptor are highly conserved across all five muscarinic receptors, while residues implicated in the functional cooperativity between the orthosteric and allosteric sites are not; leading the authors to hypothesise that these residues underlie the muscarinic M_1 receptor specific cooperativity of these ligands[96].

Muscarinic M_1 receptor allosteric compounds

There has been considerable interest in using allosteric ligands to target GPCRs implicated in a variety of disease

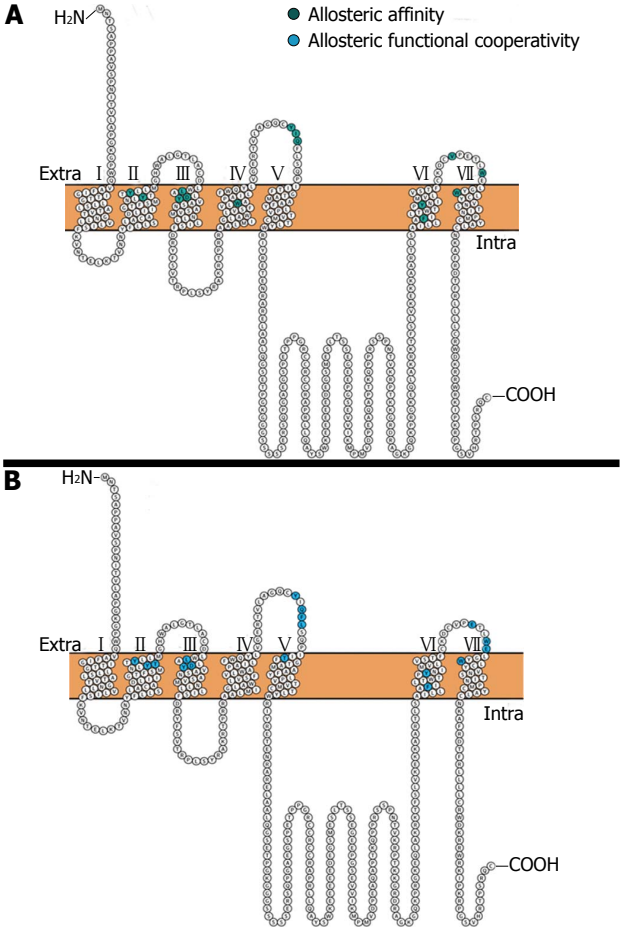


Figure 2 Snake diagram of muscarinic M_1 receptor. The snake diagrams begin with the extracellular amino terminal and terminate at the intracellular carboxyl terminal. Highlighted are amino acids identified by site directed mutagenesis as being implicated in (A) allosteric ligand binding (green) and (B) functional cooperativity (blue)[94-96]. Roman numerals denote transmembrane domains. Diagrams generated using Protter[113]. Extra: Extracellular domain; Intra: Intracellular domain.

states (reviewed in[97,98]). Here we will discuss a number of attempts to develop compounds targeted to the allosteric site of the muscarinic M_1 receptor. Early evidence for allosteric ligands came from the discovery that brucine is a weak PAM[99] and allosteric agonist of muscarinic M_1 receptors[100] demonstrating that potentiation of the muscarinic M_1 receptor is possible. Since this discovery, multiple allosteric agonists of muscarinic M_1 receptors have been identified by high through put screening; including: AC-42[101]; 77-LH-28-1, which increased gamma oscillations, which are associated with memory[56], in rat hippocampal slices and hippocampal cell firing *in vivo*[102]; 1-(1'-2-methylbenzyl)-1,4'-bipiperidin-4-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2(3H)-one (TBPB), which reversed amphetamine induced hyper-locomotion in rats[103], a model predictive of antipsychotic-like activity; LuAE51090, which improved mouse performance on the delayed alternation Y-maze[104], a model of working memory; and GSK1034702, which improved episodic memory in humans on the nicotine withdrawal model of cognitive dysfunction[38]. Additionally, [^{11}C]GSK1034702 was clinically trialled as a positron emission tomography (PET) ligand (clinicaltrials.gov identifier: NCT00937846) to assess its blood brain barrier penetrance and distribution *in vivo*; unfortunately [^{11}C]GSK1034702 was deemed unsuitable as a PET ligand for quantification of muscarinic M_1 receptors *in vivo*[105].

Notably, Researchers at Merck Laboratories identified the first highly selective PAM of the muscarinic M_1 receptor: BQCA[106]. BQCA increases ACh affinity for human cloned muscarinic M_1 receptors demonstrating a selective, dose dependant potentiation of ACh's ability to displace [^{3}H]n-methyl scopolamine ([^{3}H]NMS), a pan muscarinic antagonist, binding to muscarinic M_1 receptors expressed in Chinese hamster ovary cells[107]. Further, BQCA has been demonstrated to potentiate muscarinic M_1 receptors cloned from rhesus, dog, mouse and rat muscarinic M_1 receptors as well as selectively potentiate native mouse muscarinic M_1 receptors *in vivo*[107,108]. Recently, we demonstrated that BQCA dose dependently potentiates ACh's ability to displace [^{3}H]NMS in human brain homogenate and that a subset of individuals with schizophrenia with a loss of cortical muscarinic M_1 receptors[78] have a decreased response to BQCA's modulation of ACh binding[109]. Modification of this compound by chemical motif substitution[37,110] is ongoing. A selective muscarinic M_1 receptor PAM based on the BQCA scaffold, 1-{[4-cyano-4-(pyridine-2-yl) piperidin-1-yl] methyl}-4-oxo-4 H-quinolizine-3-carboxylic acid (PQCA)[37], attenuated scopolamine deficits in novel object recognition, self-ordered spatial search, and the object retrieval detour tasks in rats, cynomolgus macaques, and rhesus macaques, respectively[111]. The efficacy of PQCA in these three models of cognitive function further supports the role of the muscarinic M_1 receptor in cognition and demonstrates the potential of this class of compound as useful therapeutics. Additionally, Merck have taken MK-7622, a muscarinic M_1 receptor PAM to phase Ⅱ clinical trial (clinicaltrials.gov identifier: NCT01852110) as an adjunct therapy to an acetylcholinesterase inhibitor (donepezil, rivastigmine or galantamine) for the treatment of cognitive impairment and disease progression in Alzheimer's disease. This highlights the promise of allosteric modulators as pro-cognitive agents.

CONCLUSION

Allosteric modulators of muscarinic M_1 receptors provide a promising method for developing effective, well-tolerated therapies to redress cognitive impairment, particularly in schizophrenia and other diseases characterised by significant cognitive impairment. Historically, treating any disorder with drugs targeting muscarinic receptors has been hampered by the difficulties associated with targeting the orthosteric binding site, particularly the propensity for "off target" side effects, due to the high degree of homology between the orthosteric binding sites of the five muscarinic receptors. Fortunately, the discovery of highly selective allosteric ligands provides a

potential solution to this problem and provides a unique opportunity to maintain physiological firing patterns, unattainable using orthosteric ligands. However, allosteric modulation comes with its own host of idiosyncrasies to be considered when developing ligands targeting this region of the receptors. At the level of preclinical pharmacology, allosteric compounds provide an exciting opportunity to tease out specific downstream signalling pathways, selectively targeting them to achieve highly specific fine-tuning of receptor response. Additionally, by iterative chemical substitutions of the base compound, multiple parameters can be modified to tailor compounds to specific needs, enhancing some aspects of signalling while inhibiting or not affecting others. Although these aspects of allostery provide unique opportunities, they also highlight a need for care when testing compounds and appropriate modelling paradigms, as particular effects could be overlooked or masked by classical drug screening methods. The emergence of allosteric ligands provides us with the exciting opportunity to develop well-tolerated, highly selective therapies with the ability to fine tune distinct pathways addressing subtle pathological changes in complex disease states.

REFERENCES

1 **Dean B**. Signal transmission, rather than reception, is the underlying neurochemical abnormality in schizophrenia. *Aust N Z J Psychiatry* 2000; **34**: 560-569 [PMID: 10954386 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1614.2000.00747.x]

2 **Dean B**, Moller HJ, Svensson TH, Geyer MA, Rujescu D, Scarr E, Millan MJ. Problems and solutions to filling the drying drug pipeline for psychiatric disorders: a report from the inaugural 2012 CINP Think Tank. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2014; **17**: 137-148 [PMID: 24063634 DOI: 10.1017/s1461145713001077]

3 **Andén NE**, Butcher SG, Corrodi H, Fuxe K, Ungerstedt U. Receptor activity and turnover of dopamine and noradrenaline after neuroleptics. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1970; **11**: 303-314 [PMID: 5477307 DOI: 10.1016/0014-2999(70)90006-3]

4 **Carlsson A**. The current status of the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 1988; **1**: 179-186 [PMID: 3075131 DOI: 10.1016/0893-133X(88)90012-7]

5 **Toda M**, Abi-Dargham A. Dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia: making sense of it all. *Curr Psychiatry Rep* 2007; **9**: 329-336 [PMID: 17880866 DOI: 10.1007/s11920-007-0041-7]

6 **Fan JB**, Zhang CS, Gu NF, Li XW, Sun WW, Wang HY, Feng GY, St Clair D, He L. Catechol-O-methyltransferase gene Val/Met functional polymorphism and risk of schizophrenia: a large-scale association study plus meta-analysis. *Biol Psychiatry* 2005; **57**: 139-144 [PMID: 15652872 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2004.10.018]

7 **Moncrieff J**. A critique of the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia and psychosis. *Harv Rev Psychiatry* 2009; **17**: 214-225 [PMID: 19499420 DOI: 10.1080/10673220902979896]

8 **Kendler KS**, Schaffner KF. The dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia: An historical and philosophical analysis. *PPP* 2011; **18**: 41-63 [DOI: 10.1353/ppp.2011.0005]

9 **Dean B**. Neurochemistry of schizophrenia: the contribution of neuroimaging postmortem pathology and neurochemistry in schizophrenia. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2012; **12**: 2375-2392 [PMID: 23279177 DOI: 10.2174/1568026611212210009]

10 **Baldessarini RJ**, Frankenburg FR. Clozapine. A novel antipsychotic agent. *N Engl J Med* 1991; **324**: 746-754 [PMID: 1671793 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199103143241107]

11 **Meltzer HY**. Treatment-resistant schizophrenia--the role of clozapine. *Curr Med Res Opin* 1997; **14**: 1-20 [PMID: 9524789 DOI: 10.1185/03007999709113338]

12 **Borison RL**, Pathiraja AP, Diamond BI, Meibach RC. Risperidone: clinical safety and efficacy in schizophrenia. *Psychopharmacol Bull* 1992; **28**: 213-218 [PMID: 1381102]

13 **Leysen JE**, Gommeren W, Eens A, de Chaffoy de Courcelles D, Stoof JC, Janssen PA. Biochemical profile of risperidone, a new antipsychotic. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1988; **247**: 661-670 [PMID: 2460616]

14 **Vardy MM**, Kay SR. LSD psychosis or LSD-induced schizophrenia? A multimethod inquiry. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1983; **40**: 877-883 [PMID: 6870484 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.1983.01790070067008]

15 **Woolley DW**, Shaw E. A biochemical and pharmacological suggestion about certain mental disorders. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1954; **40**: 228-231 [PMID: 16589461 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.40.4.228]

16 **Leysen JE**, Niemegeers CJ, Tollenaere JP, Laduron PM. Serotonergic component of neuroleptic receptors. *Nature* 1978; **272**: 168-171 [PMID: 564466 DOI: 10.1038/272168a0]

17 **Meltzer HY**, Massey BW. The role of serotonin receptors in the action of atypical antipsychotic drugs. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2011; **11**: 59-67 [PMID: 21420906 DOI: 10.1016/j.coph.2011.02.007]

18 **Selvaraj S**, Arnone D, Cappai A, Howes O. Alterations in the serotonin system in schizophrenia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of postmortem and molecular imaging studies. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev* 2014; **45**: 233-245 [PMID: 24971825 DOI: 10.1016/j.neubiorev.2014.06.005]

19 **Krystal JH**, Karper LP, Seibyl JP, Freeman GK, Delaney R, Bremner JD, Heninger GR, Bowers MB, Charney DS. Subanesthetic effects of the noncompetitive NMDA antagonist, ketamine, in humans. Psychotomimetic, perceptual, cognitive, and neuroendocrine responses. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1994; **51**: 199-214 [PMID: 8122957 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.1994.03950030035004]

20 **Lahti AC**, Koffel B, LaPorte D, Tamminga CA. Subanesthetic doses of ketamine stimulate psychosis in schizophrenia. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 1995; **13**: 9-19 [PMID: 8526975 DOI: 10.1016/0893-133X(94)00131-I]

21 **Citrome L**. Unmet needs in the treatment of schizophrenia: new targets to help different symptom domains. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2014; **75** Suppl 1: 21-26 [PMID: 24581451 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.13049su1c.04]

22 **Poels EM**, Kegeles LS, Kantrowitz JT, Javitt DC, Lieberman JA, Abi-Dargham A, Girgis RR. Glutamatergic abnormalities in schizophrenia: a review of proton MRS findings. *Schizophr Res* 2014; **152**: 325-332 [PMID: 24418122 DOI: 10.1016/j.schres.2013.12.013]

23 **Broadbelt K**, Byne W, Jones LB. Evidence for a decrease in basilar dendrites of pyramidal cells in schizophrenic medial prefrontal cortex. *Schizophr Res* 2002; **58**: 75-81 [PMID: 12363393 DOI: 10.1016/S0920-9964(02)00201-3]

24 **Glantz LA**, Lewis DA. Decreased dendritic spine density on prefrontal cortical pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2000; **57**: 65-73 [PMID: 10632234 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.57.1.65]

25 **Garey LJ**, Ong WY, Patel TS, Kanani M, Davis A, Mortimer AM, Barnes TR, Hirsch SR. Reduced dendritic spine density on cerebral cortical pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1998; **65**: 446-453 [PMID: 9771764 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.65.4.446]

26 **Hu W**, MacDonald ML, Elswick DE, Sweet RA. The glutamate hypothesis of schizophrenia: evidence from human brain tissue studies. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2015; **1338**: 38-57 [PMID: 25315318 DOI: 10.1111/nyas.12547]

27 **Cohen LH**, Thale T, Tissenbaum MJ. Acetylcholine treatment of schizophrenia. *Arch Neurol Psychiatry* 1944; **51**: 171-175 [DOI: 10.1001/archneurpsyc.1944.02290260061006]

28 **Bymaster FP**, Calligaro DO, Falcone JF, Marsh RD, Moore NA, Tye NC, Seeman P, Wong DT. Radioreceptor binding profile of the atypical antipsychotic olanzapine. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 1996; **14**: 87-96 [PMID: 8822531 DOI: 10.1016/0893-133X(94)00129-N]

29 **Brunton LL**, Chabner B, Knollmann BC. Goodman & gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2011: 2084

30 **Mesulam MM**. The cholinergic innervation of the human cerebral cortex. *Prog Brain Res* 2004; **145**: 67-78 [PMID: 14650907 DOI: 10.1016/S0079-6123(03)45004-8]

31 **Zhang W**, Yamada M, Gomeza J, Basile AS, Wess J. Multiple muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes modulate striatal dopamine release, as studied with M1-M5 muscarinic receptor knock-out mice. *J Neurosci* 2002; **22**: 6347-6352 [PMID: 12151512]

32 **Sur C**, Mallorga PJ, Wittmann M, Jacobson MA, Pascarella D, Williams JB, Brandish PE, Pettibone DJ, Scolnick EM, Conn PJ. N-desmethylclozapine, an allosteric agonist at muscarinic 1 receptor, potentiates N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 13674-13679 [PMID: 14595031 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1835612100]

33 **Koyama Y**, Kayama Y. Mutual interactions among cholinergic, noradrenergic and serotonergic neurons studied by ionophoresis of these transmitters in rat brainstem nuclei. *Neuroscience* 1993; **55**: 1117-1126 [PMID: 8232901 DOI: 10.1016/0306-4522(93)90325-A]

34 **Scarr E**, Gibbons AS, Neo J, Udawela M, Dean B. Cholinergic connectivity: it's implications for psychiatric disorders. *Front Cell Neurosci* 2013; **7**: 55 [PMID: 23653591 DOI: 10.3389/fncel.2013.00055]

35 **Sarter M**, Lustig C, Taylor SF. Cholinergic contributions to the cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia and the viability of cholinergic treatments. *Neuropharmacology* 2012; **62**: 1544-1553 [PMID: 21156184 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2010.12.001]

36 **Sarter M**, Nelson CL, Bruno JP. Cortical cholinergic transmission and cortical information processing in schizophrenia. *Schizophr Bull* 2005; **31**: 117-138 [PMID: 15888431 DOI: 10.1093/schbul/sbi006]

37 **Kuduk SD**, Chang RK, Di Marco CN, Pitts DR, Greshock TJ, Ma L, Wittmann M, Seager MA, Koeplinger KA, Thompson CD, Hartman GD, Bilodeau MT, Ray WJ. Discovery of a selective allosteric M1 receptor modulator with suitable development properties based on a quinolizidinone carboxylic acid scaffold. *J Med Chem* 2011; **54**: 4773-4780 [PMID: 21682298 DOI: 10.1021/jm200400m]

38 **Nathan PJ**, Watson J, Lund J, Davies CH, Peters G, Dodds CM, Swirski B, Lawrence P, Bentley GD, O'Neill BV, Robertson J, Watson S, Jones GA, Maruff P, Croft RJ, Laruelle M, Bullmore ET. The potent M1 receptor allosteric agonist GSK1034702 improves episodic memory in humans in the nicotine abstinence model of cognitive dysfunction. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2013; **16**: 721-731 [PMID: 22932339 DOI: 10.1017/s1461145712000752]

39 **Shekhar A**, Potter WZ, Lightfoot J, Lienemann J, Dubé S, Mallinckrodt C, Bymaster FP, McKinzie DL, Felder CC. Selective muscarinic receptor agonist xanomeline as a novel treatment approach for schizophrenia. *Am J Psychiatry* 2008; **165**: 1033-1039 [PMID: 18593778 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ajp.2008.06091591]

40 **Nielsen RE**, Levander S, Kjaersdam Telléus G, Jensen SO, Østergaard Christensen T, Leucht S. Second-generation antipsychotic effect on cognition in patients with schizophrenia--a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2015; **131**: 185-196 [PMID: 25597383 DOI: 10.1111/acps.12374]

41 **Graef S**, Schönknecht P, Sabri O, Hegerl U. Cholinergic receptor subtypes and their role in cognition, emotion, and vigilance control: an overview of preclinical and clinical findings. *Psychopharmacology* (Berl) 2011; **215**: 205-229 [PMID: 21212938 DOI: 10.1007/s00213-010-2153-8]

42 **Nuechterlein KH**, Barch DM, Gold JM, Goldberg TE, Green MF, Heaton RK. Identification of separable cognitive factors in schizophrenia. *Schizophr Res* 2004; **72**: 29-39 [PMID: 15531405 DOI: 10.1016/j.schres.2004.09.007]

43 **Dale H**. Chemical transmission of the effects of nerve impulses. *Br Med J* 1934; **1**: 835-841 [PMID: 20778253 DOI: 10.2307/25320967]

44 **Rang HP**, Dale MM, Ritter JM, Flower RJ. Rang and dale's pharmacology. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier, 2007: 397-399

45 **Perry E**, Walker M, Grace J, Perry R. Acetylcholine in mind: a neurotransmitter correlate of consciousness? *Trends Neurosci* 1999; **22**: 273-280 [PMID: 10354606 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-2236(98)01361-7]

46 **Mesulam MM**, Mufson EJ, Levey AI, Wainer BH. Cholinergic innervation of cortex by the basal forebrain: cytochemistry and cortical connections of the septal area, diagonal band nuclei, nucleus basalis (substantia innominata), and hypothalamus in the rhesus monkey. *J Comp Neurol* 1983; **214**: 170-197 [PMID: 6841683 DOI: 10.1002/cne.902140206]

47 **Zhou FM**, Wilson CJ, Dani JA. Cholinergic interneuron characteristics and nicotinic properties in the striatum. *J Neurobiol* 2002; **53**: 590-605 [PMID: 12436423 DOI: 10.1002/neu.10150]

48 **Flynn DD**, Ferrari-DiLeo G, Mash DC, Levey AI. Differential regulation of molecular subtypes of muscarinic receptors in Alzheimer's disease. *J Neurochem* 1995; **64**: 1888-1891 [PMID: 7891119 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.1995.64041888.x]

49 **Leach K**, Simms J, Sexton P, Christopoulos A. Structure-function studies of muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. In: Fryer AD, Christopoulos A and Nathanson NM Muscarinic receptors. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2012: 29-48

50 **Kruse AC**, Hu J, Pan AC, Arlow DH, Rosenbaum DM, Rosemond E, Green HF, Liu T, Chae PS, Dror RO, Shaw DE, Weis WI, Wess J, Kobilka BK. Structure and dynamics of the M3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. *Nature* 2012; **482**: 552-556 [PMID: 22358844 DOI: 10.1038/nature10867]

51 **Mrzljak L**, Levey AI, Goldman-Rakic PS. Association of m1 and m2 muscarinic receptor proteins with asymmetric synapses in the primate cerebral cortex: morphological evidence for cholinergic modulation of excitatory neurotransmission. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1993; **90**: 5194-5198 [PMID: 8389473 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.90.11.5194]

52 **Hamilton SE**, Nathanson NM. The M1 receptor is required for muscarinic activation of mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase in murine cerebral cortical neurons. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 15850-15853 [PMID: 11278934 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M011563200]

53 **Berkeley JL**, Gomeza J, Wess J, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, Levey AI. M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors activate extracellular signal-regulated kinase in CA1 pyramidal neurons in mouse hippocampal slices. *Mol Cell Neurosci* 2001; **18**: 512-524 [PMID: 11922142 DOI: 10.1006/mcne.2001.1042]

54 **Davis S**, Vanhoutte P, Pages C, Caboche J, Laroche S. The MAPK/ERK cascade targets both Elk-1 and cAMP response element-binding protein to control long-term potentiation-dependent gene expression in the dentate gyrus in vivo. *J Neurosci* 2000; **20**: 4563-4572 [PMID: 10844026]

55 **Kelleher RJ**, Govindarajan A, Jung HY, Kang H, Tonegawa S. Translational control by MAPK signaling in long-term synaptic plasticity and memory. *Cell* 2004; **116**: 467-479 [PMID: 15016380 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(04)00115-1]

56 **Singer W**. Synchronization of cortical activity and its putative role in information processing and learning. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1993; **55**: 349-374 [PMID: 8466179 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.ph.55.030193.002025]

57 **Fisahn A**, Yamada M, Duttaroy A, Gan JW, Deng CX, McBain CJ, Wess J. Muscarinic induction of hippocampal gamma oscillations requires coupling of the M1 receptor to two mixed cation currents. *Neuron* 2002; **33**: 615-624 [PMID: 11856534 DOI: 10.1016/S0896-6273(02)00587-1]

58 **Zhang Y**, Dyck RH, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, Yan J. Disrupted tonotopy of the auditory cortex in mice lacking M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. *Hear Res* 2005; **201**: 145-155 [PMID: 15721569 DOI: 10.1016/j.heares.2004.10.003]

59 **Zhang Y**, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, Yan J. Decreased input-specific plasticity of the auditory cortex in mice lacking M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. *Cereb Cortex* 2006; **16**: 1258-1265 [PMID: 16292003 DOI: 10.1093/cercor/bhj067]

60 **Anagnostaras SG**, Murphy GG, Hamilton SE, Mitchell SL, Rahnama NP, Nathanson NM, Silva AJ. Selective cognitive dysfunction in acetylcholine M1 muscarinic receptor mutant mice. *Nat Neurosci* 2003; **6**: 51-58 [PMID: 12483218 DOI: 10.1038/nn992]

61 **Hamilton SE**, Loose MD, Qi M, Levey AI, Hille B, McKnight GS, Idzerda RL, Nathanson NM. Disruption of the m1 receptor

gene ablates muscarinic receptor-dependent M current regulation and seizure activity in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 13311-13316 [PMID: 9371842 DOI: 10.2307/43583]
62 **Schroeder BC**, Kubisch C, Stein V, Jentsch TJ. Moderate loss of function of cyclic-AMP-modulated KCNQ2/KCNQ3 K+ channels causes epilepsy. *Nature* 1998; **396**: 687-690 [PMID: 9872318 DOI: 10.1038/25367]
63 **Gerber DJ**, Sotnikova TD, Gainetdinov RR, Huang SY, Caron MG, Tonegawa S. Hyperactivity, elevated dopaminergic transmission, and response to amphetamine in M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 15312-15317 [PMID: 11752469]
64 **Carrigan KA**, Dykstra LA. Behavioral effects of morphine and cocaine in M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice. *Psychopharmacology* (Berl) 2007; **191**: 985-993 [PMID: 17211651 DOI: 10.1007/s00213-006-0671-1]
65 **Raedler TJ**, Knable MB, Jones DW, Urbina RA, Egan MF, Weinberger DR. Central muscarinic acetylcholine receptor availability in patients treated with clozapine. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2003; **28**: 1531-1537 [PMID: 12799613 DOI: 10.1038/sj.npp.1300210]
66 **Ellis JR**, Ellis KA, Bartholomeusz CF, Harrison BJ, Wesnes KA, Erskine FF, Vitetta L, Nathan PJ. Muscarinic and nicotinic receptors synergistically modulate working memory and attention in humans. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2006; **9**: 175-189 [PMID: 15877932 DOI: 10.1017/S1461145705005407]
67 **Green A**, Ellis KA, Ellis J, Bartholomeusz CF, Ilic S, Croft RJ, Phan KL, Nathan PJ. Muscarinic and nicotinic receptor modulation of object and spatial n-back working memory in humans. *Pharmacol Biochem Behav* 2005; **81**: 575-584 [PMID: 15936063 DOI: 10.1016/j.pbb.2005.04.010]
68 **Mintzer MZ**, Griffiths RR. Lorazepam and scopolamine: A single-dose comparison of effects on human memory and attentional processes. *Exp Clin Psychopharmacol* 2003; **11**: 56-72 [PMID: 12622344 DOI: 10.1037/1064-1297.11.1.56]
69 **Ketchum JS**, Sidell FR, Crowell EB, Aghajanian GK, Hayes AH. Atropine, scopolamine, and ditran: comparative pharmacology and antagonists in man. *Psychopharmacologia* 1973; **28**: 121-145 [PMID: 4694622 DOI: 10.1007/BF00421398]
70 **Riemann D**, Kammerer J, Löw H, Schmidt MH. Sleep in adolescents with primary major depression and schizophrenia: a pilot study. *J Child Psychol Psychiatry* 1995; **36**: 313-326 [PMID: 7759593 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-7610.1995.tb01827.x]
71 **Tandon R**, Shipley JE, Taylor S, Greden JF, Eiser A, DeQuardo J, Goodson J. Electroencephalographic sleep abnormalities in schizophrenia. Relationship to positive/negative symptoms and prior neuroleptic treatment. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1992; **49**: 185-194 [PMID: 1348923 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.1992.01820030017003]
72 **Krieg JC**, Berger M. REM sleep and cortisol response to the cholinergic challenge with RS 86 in normals and depressives. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 1987; **76**: 600-602 [PMID: 3434333 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0447.1987.tb02926.x]
73 **Hohagen F**, Riemann D, Spiegel R, Holzhauer M, Berger M. Influence of the cholinergic agonist SDZ 210-086 on sleep in healthy subjects. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 1993; **9**: 225-232 [PMID: 8280346 DOI: 10.1038/npp.1993.58]
74 **Riemann D**, Hohagen F, Krieger S, Gann H, Müller WE, Olbrich R, Wark HJ, Bohus M, Löw H, Berger M. Cholinergic REM induction test: muscarinic supersensitivity underlies polysomnographic findings in both depression and schizophrenia. *J Psychiatr Res* 1994; **28**: 195-210 [PMID: 7932282 DOI: 10.1016/0022-3956(94)90006-X]
75 **Raedler TJ**, Bymaster FP, Tandon R, Copolov D, Dean B. Towards a muscarinic hypothesis of schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 2007; **12**: 232-246 [PMID: 17146471 DOI: 10.1038/sj.mp.4001924]
76 **Dean B**, McLeod M, Keriakous D, McKenzie J, Scarr E. Decreased muscarinic1 receptors in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex of subjects with schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 2002; **7**: 1083-1091 [PMID: 12476323 DOI: 10.1038/sj.mp.4001199]
77 **Scarr E**, Keriakous D, Crossland N, Dean B. No change in cortical muscarinic M2, M3 receptors or [35S]GTPgammaS binding in schizophrenia. *Life Sci* 2006; **78**: 1231-1237 [PMID: 16214178]
78 **Scarr E**, Cowie TF, Kanellakis S, Sundram S, Pantelis C, Dean B. Decreased cortical muscarinic receptors define a subgroup of subjects with schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 2009; **14**: 1017-1023 [PMID: 18317461 DOI: 10.1038/mp.2008.28]
79 **Jablensky A**. Subtyping schizophrenia: implications for genetic research. *Mol Psychiatry* 2006; **11**: 815-836 [PMID: 16801952 DOI: 10.1038/sj.mp.4001857]
80 **Scarr E**, Dean B. Muscarinic receptors: do they have a role in the pathology and treatment of schizophrenia? *J Neurochem* 2008; **107**: 1188-1195 [PMID: 18957051 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05711.x]
81 **Seo MS**, Scarr E, Dean B. An investigation of the factors that regulate muscarinic receptor expression in schizophrenia. *Schizophr Res* 2014; **158**: 247-254 [PMID: 25037527 DOI: 10.1016/j.schres.2014.06.039]
82 **Gibbons AS**, Scarr E, Boer S, Money T, Jeon WJ, Felder C, Dean B. Widespread decreases in cortical muscarinic receptors in a subset of people with schizophrenia. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2013; **16**: 37-46 [PMID: 22338582 DOI: 10.1017/S1461145712000028S1461145712000028]
83 **Raedler TJ**, Knable MB, Jones DW, Urbina RA, Gorey JG, Lee KS, Egan MF, Coppola R, Weinberger DR. In vivo determination of muscarinic acetylcholine receptor availability in schizophrenia. *Am J Psychiatry* 2003; **160**: 118-127 [PMID: 12505810]
84 **Miller RJ**, Hiley CR. Anti-muscarinic properties of neuroleptics and drug-induced Parkinsonism. *Nature* 1974; **248**: 596-597 [PMID: 4150951 DOI: 10.1038/248596a0]
85 **Gronier B**, Perry KW, Rasmussen K. Activation of the mesocorticolimbic dopaminergic system by stimulation of muscarinic cholinergic receptors in the ventral tegmental area. *Psychopharmacology* (Berl) 2000; **147**: 347-355 [PMID: 10672627 DOI: 10.1007/s002130050002]
86 **Johnstone EC**, Crow TJ, Ferrier IN, Frith CD, Owens DG, Bourne RC, Gamble SJ. Adverse effects of anticholinergic medication on positive schizophrenic symptoms. *Psychol Med* 1983; **13**: 513-527 [PMID: 6413994 DOI: 10.1017/S0033291700047942]
87 **Tandon R**, DeQuardo JR, Goodson J, Mann NA, Greden JF. Effect of anticholinergics on positive and negative symptoms in schizophrenia. *Psychopharmacol Bull* 1992; **28**: 297-302 [PMID: 1480733]
88 **Brébion G**, Bressan RA, Amador X, Malaspina D, Gorman JM. Medications and verbal memory impairment in schizophrenia: the role of anticholinergic drugs. *Psychol Med* 2004; **34**: 369-374 [PMID: 14982143 DOI: 10.1017/S0033291703008900]
89 **Bodick NC**, Offen W. S-16-4 xanomeline: The first study of the safety and efficacy of an m1 agonist in mild and moderate alzheimer's disease. *Eur Neuropsychopharm* 1995; **5**: 205 [DOI: 10.1016/0924-977X(95)90228-6]
90 **Cutler NR**, Sramek JJ, Seifert RD, Conrad JJ, Wardle TS, Hurley DJ, Thoren LM. A bridging study of xanomeline tartrate in alzheimers disease (AD). *Biol Psychiat* 1994; **35**: 628-628 [DOI: 10.1016/0006-3223(94)90706-4]
91 **Christopoulos A**, Changeux JP, Catterall WA, Fabbro D, Burris TP, Cidlowski JA, Olsen RW, Peters JA, Neubig RR, Pin JP, Sexton PM, Kenakin TP, Ehlert FJ, Spedding M, Langmead CJ. International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology. XC. multisite pharmacology: recommendations for the nomenclature of receptor allosterism and allosteric ligands. *Pharmacol Rev* 2014; **66**: 918-947 [PMID: 25026896 DOI: 10.1124/pr.114.008862]
92 **Hulme EC**, Lu ZL, Bee MS. Scanning mutagenesis studies of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. *Receptors Channels* 2003; **9**: 215-228 [PMID: 12893535 DOI: 10.1080/10606820390217050]
93 **Haga K**, Kruse AC, Asada H, Yurugi-Kobayashi T, Shiroishi M, Zhang C, Weis WI, Okada T, Kobilka BK, Haga T, Kobayashi T. Structure of the human M2 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor bound to an antagonist. *Nature* 2012; **482**: 547-551 [PMID: 22278061 DOI: 10.1038/nature10753]
94 **Matsui H**, Lazareno S, Birdsall NJ. Probing of the location of the allosteric site on m1 muscarinic receptors by site-directed mutagenesis. *Mol Pharmacol* 1995; **47**: 88-98 [PMID: 7838137]
95 **Abdul-Ridha A**, Lane JR, Mistry SN, López L, Sexton PM,

Scammells PJ, Christopoulos A, Canals M. Mechanistic insights into allosteric structure-function relationships at the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 33701-33711 [PMID: 25326383 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M114.604967]

96 **Abdul-Ridha A**, López L, Keov P, Thal DM, Mistry SN, Sexton PM, Lane JR, Canals M, Christopoulos A. Molecular determinants of allosteric modulation at the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 6067-6079 [PMID: 24443568 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M113.539080]

97 **Conn PJ**, Christopoulos A, Lindsley CW. Allosteric modulators of GPCRs: a novel approach for the treatment of CNS disorders. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2009; **8**: 41-54 [PMID: 19116626 DOI: 10.1038/nrd2760]

98 **Dalet FG**, Guadalupe TF, María Del Carmen CH, Humberto GA, Antonio SU. Insights into the structural biology of G-protein coupled receptors impacts drug design for central nervous system neurodegenerative processes. *Neural Regen Res* 2013; **8**: 2290-2302 [PMID: 25206539 DOI: 10.3969/j.issn.1673-5374.2013.24.009]

99 **Lazareno S**, Gharagozloo P, Kuonen D, Popham A, Birdsall NJ. Subtype-selective positive cooperative interactions between brucine analogues and acetylcholine at muscarinic receptors: radioligand binding studies. *Mol Pharmacol* 1998; **53**: 573-589 [PMID: 9495826 DOI: 10.1124/mol.53.3.573]

100 **Jakubík J**, Bacáková L, Lisá V, el-Fakahany EE, Tucek S. Activation of muscarinic acetylcholine receptors via their allosteric binding sites. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 8705-8709 [PMID: 8710935]

101 **Spalding TA**, Trotter C, Skjaerbaek N, Messier TL, Currier EA, Burstein ES, Li D, Hacksell U, Brann MR. Discovery of an ectopic activation site on the M(1) muscarinic receptor. *Mol Pharmacol* 2002; **61**: 1297-1302 [PMID: 12021390 DOI: 10.1124/mol.61.6.1297]

102 **Langmead CJ**, Austin NE, Branch CL, Brown JT, Buchanan KA, Davies CH, Forbes IT, Fry VA, Hagan JJ, Herdon HJ, Jones GA, Jeggo R, Kew JN, Mazzali A, Melarange R, Patel N, Pardoe J, Randall AD, Roberts C, Roopun A, Starr KR, Teriakidis A, Wood MD, Whittington M, Wu Z, Watson J. Characterization of a CNS penetrant, selective M1 muscarinic receptor agonist, 77-LH-28-1. *Br J Pharmacol* 2008; **154**: 1104-1115 [PMID: 18454168 DOI: 10.1038/bjp.2008.152]

103 **Jones CK**, Brady AE, Davis AA, Xiang Z, Bubser M, Tantawy MN, Kane AS, Bridges TM, Kennedy JP, Bradley SR, Peterson TE, Ansari MS, Baldwin RM, Kessler RM, Deutch AY, Lah JJ, Levey AI, Lindsley CW, Conn PJ. Novel selective allosteric activator of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor regulates amyloid processing and produces antipsychotic-like activity in rats. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 10422-10433 [PMID: 18842902 DOI: 10.1523/jneurosci.1850-08.2008]

104 **Sams AG**, Hentzer M, Mikkelsen GK, Larsen K, Bundgaard C, Plath N, Christoffersen CT, Bang-Andersen B. Discovery of N-{1-[3-(3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzo[1,4]oxazin-4-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl}-2-phenylacetamide (Lu AE51090): an allosteric muscarinic M1 receptor agonist with unprecedented selectivity and procognitive potential. *J Med Chem* 2010; **53**: 6386-6397 [PMID: 20684563 DOI: 10.1021/jm100697g]

105 **Ridler K**, Cunningham V, Huiban M, Martarello L, Pampols-Maso S, Passchier J, Gunn RN, Searle G, Abi-Dargham A, Slifstein M, Watson J, Laruelle M, Rabiner EA. An evaluation of the brain distribution of [(11)C]GSK1034702, a muscarinic-1 (M 1) positive allosteric modulator in the living human brain using positron emission tomography. *EJNMMI Res* 2014; **4**: 66 [PMID: 26116126 DOI: 10.1186/s13550-014-0066-y]

106 **Marlo JE**, Niswender CM, Days EL, Bridges TM, Xiang Y, Rodriguez AL, Shirey JK, Brady AE, Nalywajko T, Luo Q, Austin CA, Williams MB, Kim K, Williams R, Orton D, Brown HA, Lindsley CW, Weaver CD, Conn PJ. Discovery and characterization of novel allosteric potentiators of M1 muscarinic receptors reveals multiple modes of activity. *Mol Pharmacol* 2009; **75**: 577-588 [PMID: 19047481 DOI: 10.1124/mol.108.052886]

107 **Ma L**, Seager MA, Wittmann M, Jacobson M, Bickel D, Burno M, Jones K, Graufelds VK, Xu G, Pearson M, McCampbell A, Gaspar R, Shughrue P, Danziger A, Regan C, Flick R, Pascarella D, Garson S, Doran S, Kreatsoulas C, Veng L, Lindsley CW, Shipe W, Kuduk S, Sur C, Kinney G, Seabrook GR, Ray WJ. Selective activation of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor achieved by allosteric potentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 15950-15955 [PMID: 19717450 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0900903106]

108 **Shirey JK**, Brady AE, Jones PJ, Davis AA, Bridges TM, Kennedy JP, Jadhav SB, Menon UN, Xiang Z, Watson ML, Christian EP, Doherty JJ, Quirk MC, Snyder DH, Lah JJ, Levey AI, Nicolle MM, Lindsley CW, Conn PJ. A selective allosteric potentiator of the M1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor increases activity of medial prefrontal cortical neurons and restores impairments in reversal learning. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 14271-14286 [PMID: 19906975 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3930-09.2009]

109 **Dean B**, Hopper S, Conn PJ, Scarr E. Changes in BQCA Allosteric Modulation of [(3)H]NMS Binding to Human Cortex within Schizophrenia and by Divalent Cations. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26511338 DOI: 10.1038/npp.2015.330]

110 **Kuduk SD**, Chang RK, Greshock TJ, Ray WJ, Ma L, Wittmann M, Seager MA, Koeplinger KA, Thompson CD, Hartman GD, Bilodeau MT. Identification of amides as carboxylic Acid surrogates for quinolizidinone-based m1 positive allosteric modulators. *ACS Med Chem Lett* 2012; **3**: 1070-1074 [PMID: 24900430 DOI: 10.1021/ml300280g]

111 **Uslaner JM**, Eddins D, Puri V, Cannon CE, Sutcliffe J, Chew CS, Pearson M, Vivian JA, Chang RK, Ray WJ, Kuduk SD, Wittmann M. The muscarinic M1 receptor positive allosteric modulator PQCA improves cognitive measures in rat, cynomolgus macaque, and rhesus macaque. *Psychopharmacology* (Berl) 2013; **225**: 21-30 [PMID: 22825578 DOI: 10.1007/s00213-012-2788-8]

112 **Felten DL**, Shetty A. Netter's atlas of neuroscience. 2 ed. Elsevier, 2009: 438

113 **Omasits U**, Ahrens CH, Müller S, Wollscheid B. Protter: interactive protein feature visualization and integration with experimental proteomic data. *Bioinformatics* 2014; **30**: 884-886 [PMID: 24162465 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btt607]

114 **Dean B**, Crook JM, Opeskin K, Hill C, Keks N, Copolov DL. The density of muscarinic M1 receptors is decreased in the caudate-putamen of subjects with schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 1996; **1**: 54-58 [PMID: 9118315]

115 **Crook JM**, Dean B, Pavey G, Copolov D. The binding of [3H]AF-DX 384 is reduced in the caudate-putamen of subjects with schizophrenia. *Life Sci* 1999; **64**: 1761-1771 [PMID: 10353630]

116 **Dean B**, Crook JM, Pavey G, Opeskin K, Copolov DL. Muscarinic1 and 2 receptor mRNA in the human caudate-putamen: no change in m1 mRNA in schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 2000; **5**: 203-207 [PMID: 10822350]

117 **Crook JM**, Tomaskovic-Crook E, Copolov DL, Dean B. Low muscarinic receptor binding in prefrontal cortex from subjects with schizophrenia: a study of Brodmann's areas 8, 9, 10, and 46 and the effects of neuroleptic drug treatment. *Am J Psychiatry* 2001; **158**: 918-925 [PMID: 11384900]

118 **Mancama D**, Arranz MJ, Landau S, Kerwin R. Reduced expression of the muscarinic 1 receptor cortical subtype in schizophrenia. *Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet* 2003; **119B**: 2-6 [PMID: 12707929]

119 **Zavitsanou K**, Katsifis A, Mattner F, Huang XF. Investigation of m1/m4 muscarinic receptors in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and major depression disorder. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2004; **29**: 619-625 [PMID: 14694353]

120 **Zavitsanou K**, Katsifis A, Yu Y, Huang XF. M2/M4 muscarinic receptor binding in the anterior cingulate cortex in schizophrenia and mood disorders. *Brain Res Bull* 2005; **65**: 397-403 [PMID: 15833594 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainresbull.2005.02.007]

121 **Deng C**, Huang XF. Decreased density of muscarinic receptors in the superior temporal gyrusin schizophrenia. *J Neurosci Res* 2005; **81**: 883-890 [PMID: 16041805 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.20600]

122 **Scarr E**, Sundrarn S, Keriakous D, Dean B. Altered hippocampal

muscarinic m4, but not m1, receptor expression from subjects with schizophrenia. *Biol Psychiat* 2007; **61**: 1161-1170 [DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2006.08.050]

123 **Dean B**, Soulby A, Evin GM, Scarr E. Levels of [(3)H]pirenzepine binding in Brodmann's area 6 from subjects with schizophrenia is not associated with changes in the transcription factor SP1 or BACE1. *Schizophr Res* 2008; **106**: 229-236 [PMID: 18790604 DOI: 10.1016/j.schres.2008.08.003]

P- Reviewer: Kravos M, Soriano-Ursua M, Yang JJ **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Li D

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.44

World J Pharmacol 2016 March 9; 5(1): 44-50
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Adalimumab and pharmacokinetics: Impact on the clinical prescription for inflammatory bowel disease

Anne-Laure Pelletier, Pascale Nicaise-Roland

Anne-Laure Pelletier, Department of Hepato-gastroenterology, Hôpital Bichat-Claude Bernard, 75018 Paris, France

Pascale Nicaise-Roland, Department of Immunology Autoimmunité et Hypersensibilités, Hôpital Bichat-Claude Bernard, 75018 Paris, France

Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this paper with literature review, analysis, drafting and critical revision, editing and final approval of the final version.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the senior author or the coauthor who contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Anne-Laure Pelletier, MD, Hospital Practitioner, Department of Hepato-Gastroenterology, Hôpital Bichat-Claude Bernard, 46 rue Huchard, 75018 Paris, France. anne-laure.pelletier@bch.aphp.fr
Telephone: +33-1-40257200
Fax: +33-1-40258783

Received: September 22, 2015
Peer-review started: October 6, 2015
First decision: October 27, 2015
Revised: November 19, 2015
Accepted: December 13, 2015
Article in press: December 14, 2015
Published online: March 9, 2016

Abstract

Anti-tumor necrosis factor (TNF) drugs are widely prescribed for inflammatory disease. A loss of response to adalimumab is frequent and the pharmacokinetics of anti-TNF therapy have important implications for patient management. Individual factors such as albumin, body weight, and disease severity based on the C-reactive protein level influence drug metabolism. Adalimumab trough levels are associated with clinical remission. On the other hand, the detection of antibodies is associated with clinical relapse. Immunosuppressive therapy could reduce antibody formation although the clinical impact is not proven. New algorithms are available to provide personalized treatment and adapt the dosage. More data are needed on dose de-escalation.

Key words: Pharmacokinetics; Adalimumab; Crohn's disease

Core tip: We have reviewed all the recent data about the factors that influence Adalimumab pharmacokinetics and the impact for the clinicians in the assessment of inflammatory disease. We looked at the inter patient variability, the drug clearance, antibodies detection, the effect of concomitant use of immunosuppressive.

Pelletier AL, Nicaise-Roland P. Adalimumab and pharmacokinetics: Impact on the clinical prescription for inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(1): 44-50 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i1/44.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i1.44

INTRODUCTION

Crohn's disease (CD) is a chronic disease due to immune dysregulation of the commensal enteric flora in genetically susceptible individuals. There is overproduction of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) alpha by monocytes

Table 1 Factors influencing Adalimumab response

Sub-cutanous absorption	Age/sex
	Body weight
	Injection site
Disease activity	CRP
Nutritional condition	Albumin

CRP: C-reaction protein.

macrophages and T cells[1-3].

Therapeutic monoclonal antibodies targeting the tumor necrosis alpha pathway for the treatment of immune disease have been shown to be effective. Adalimumab is a recombinant fully human subcutaneously delivered immunoglobulin G1 monoclonal antibody. It has binding properties and affinities for the soluble and transmembrane form of TNF alpha[4]. Anti-TNF drugs have been approved for use in moderate to severe CD when corticosteroids and/or immunomodulators have failed[5].

Twenty-five percent to 30% of patients show no or limited response to these treatments and treatment becomes ineffective during maintenance therapy in 50% of responders[2,6]. Dose escalation is often necessary to maintain a clinical response[7,8]. In addition, the aim of treatment has changed from sustained corticoid free remission to mucosal healing[9]. Little is known about the exposure - response relationship and the factors affecting it. These factors must be clarified to improve the therapeutic efficacy of these drugs. In addition, the pharmacology of anti-TNF drugs depends on the structure of the antibody as well as the properties of the target antigen[2,10]. All of these data suggest that individualize therapy and dosing are necessary[11].

This review will present the most recent data on the factors influencing Adalimumab pharmacokinetics and their clinical impact in the assessment of inflammatory bowel disease.

Pharmacokinetic variability

Maintaining effective concentrations of anti-TNF drugs is not easy and deciding on the appropriate dose depends mainly on clinical symptoms or biological data. Pharmacokinetic data have recently been shown to help with this decision[2].

There seems to be different types of non-responders with several pathogenic mechanisms causing non-response. It is unclear why certain non-responders to one anti-TNF respond to another one while others require a different drug.

One potential explanation for the lack of response to TNF is incomplete suppression of TNF activity[4]. Suboptimal exposure may be due to underdosing, rapid drug clearance and/or the development of anti-drug antibodies.

Inter-patient variability

The effective dose of each individual must be identified to adjust the doses of anti-TNF during the course of drug absorption. For example, subcutaneous absorption varies among patients due to lymphatic drainage, a smaller volume of the drug than with intravenous administration and the risk of immunogenicity associated with a skin reaction[4]. Subcutaneous absorption is slow, incomplete and variable. It takes between 2 to 8 d to reach maximum plasma concentrations. Fifty percent to 100% of the administered dose is absorbed, depending on age, body weight and injection site[2]. Low albumin as well as high body mass index (BMI) and male sex increase drug clearance as shown with Infliximab[12-14]. Adalimumab concentrations were also negatively associated with C-reaction protein (CRP) and correlated to disease severity (Table 1)[15,16]. Disease type has also been shown to influence drug response because patients with ulcerative colitis seemed to have faster clearance than CD patients. One hypothesis is that the overall inflammatory burden in patients with ulcerative colitis is higher with a greater area of mucosal lesions and a greater loss of medication in the intestinal lumen. These data must be confirmed[4].

While inter-individual levels vary, intra-patient adalimumab levels are relatively stable over time (28 wk of follow-up)[16].

Clearance

Because of their high molecular weight, monoclonal antibodies do not undergo renal elimination or metabolism by hepatocytes[4,12].

The primary route of IgG clearance is the intracellular proteolytic catabolism *via* the reticuloendothelial system with receptor mediated endocytosis. This is a saturable route of clearance[2,4].

ANTIDRUG ANTIBODIES

The drug provokes antibody formation. An inactive drug antibody complex (neutralizing antibody), may result in decreased efficacy. The drug antibody complex can also be cleared, providing an alternative clearance pathway for therapeutic protein[17,18].

Drug and antibody dosing can be performed. In clinical practice, Maser *et al*[19] first described the correlation between detectable infliximab trough levels and improved clinical outcomes in CD patients. Results were similar for rheumatoid arthritis[20]. Baert *et al*[21] first reported that patients with anti-infliximab antibodies lost the response to therapy faster than those without. Low infliximab trough levels and high antibodies were significantly more prevalent in patients with a loss of response. Most of the time, the detection of antibodies preceded the clinical loss of response by 2 mo.

Numerous studies have confirmed the positive correlation between adalimumab levels and efficacy and the negative correlation between adalimumab antibodies (ADA) and clinical response[11,22,23].

ADA levels vary from 2.6% to 46% and have increased with the development recent methods measuring free and bound ADA[3,15,22,24-27]. The risk of developing antibodies against a second anti-TNF is increased in patients who

develop antibodies against a first anti-TNF agent and in this case, they usually appear during the first year[28-31].

The notion of transient antibodies has emerged, defined as antibodies that disappear for 2 consecutive infusions. These antibodies, which appear after a median of 13.5 mo, represent 23% of antibodies[15]. Paul *et al*[32] studied 13 patients treated with adalimumab without concomitant therapy. Five patients had transient antibodies with no impact on clinical outcome.

Factors influencing antibody formation have been identified: Low early serum adalimumab concentrations have been shown to increase the future risk of antibody formation[15]. These concentrations have predictive value and could help as a guide to optimize treatment before symptoms develop. Higher post induction concentrations decrease the risk of antibody formation[13,15].

The level of antibodies rather than a simple positive/negative status is also important and the cut off is not known. For Yanai *et al*[33] ADA > 4 g/mL is predictive of failure with a 90% specificity while it is 10 ng/mL for Roblin *et al*[34]. All these factors influence efficacy as well as safety due to hypersensitivity reactions.

However, ADA are not the only mechanism because a loss of response was observed in up to 50% of patients while anti-ADA were detected in 10%-15% of the cases[4].

ADALIMUMAB AND ANTI-ADALIMUMAB ANTIBODY DETECTION

Different methods were developed to measure adalimumab and ADA with some limitations for ADA depending on the detection of non-neutralizing antibodies and of free and/or bound ADA. So the method used influences the interpretation of results.

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is the most common test for measuring adalimumab levels and for ADA detection in patient serum. For drug measurement, TNF coated on the assay plate is exposed to patient serum and the presence of adalimumab is revealed by a labelled polyclonal anti-immunoglobulin (Figure 1). All anti-TNF drugs can be detected in this assay and give a signal which explains why adalimumab can be detectable with this test even if the patient is treated with another anti-TNF.

For ADA detection, the therapeutic antibody [Fab or F(ab)2 fragment] is coated on the assay plate and exposed to patient serum and the presence of ADA is revealed by a labelled therapeutic antibody (Figure 2). However, ELISA has the following limitations: Rheumatoid factors, heterophilic antibodies, both may interfere in antibody detection, ELISA may fail to detect IgG4 antibody which may dominate after prolonged immunization and anti-TNF may aggregate on plastic surfaces giving false positive results. More important ELISA is drug-sensitive and only detects free ADA. ADA cannot be detected in presence of the drug as they are complex with a risk of false negative results. Thus, certain investigators state that ADA results are inconclusive if drug levels are elevated in sera testing negative for ADA because of the presence of antibody-drug complex[35].

Different methods have been developed to overcome this problem. Separate drug-antibody complexes by acid dissociation (pH shifting) were proposed and certain authors found that 20% more ADA could be detected. Indeed the level of ADA is underestimated as they are detected only if the concentration of antibody exceeds that of the drug in the serum[36]. In a variant of this assay, the pH shift anti-idiotype antigen-binding test (PIA) was developed in which rabbit anti-idiotype Fab is added to inhibit re-formation of ADA-drug complexes (PIA)[37]. However by this process, incomplete dissociation, re-formation of complexes or even irreversible destruction of ADA binding epitopes may occur. In another test, the drug was used as a capture antibody and anti-lambda antibody was used as a detecting antibody[38].

Fluid assays were also developed to measure drugs and ADA. In the PIA, immunoglobulins from patient sera were aggregated on a protein (Sepharose) and the presence of ADA was revealed by radiolabelled anti-TNF or F(ab)2 (to avoid rheumatoid factor interference). In the homogeneous mobility-shift assay (HMSA), a fluorescent labelled anti-TNF was used to capture free and bound ADA were separated by size exclusion high performance liquid chromatography (unclear)[39]. However, as complexes could be artificially split during chromatography, non-neutralizing ADA *in vivo* could be detectable by PIA or HMSA with no real clinical relevance.

The last assay was the cell based reporter gene assay (RGA)[40]. This is a functional test based on the detection of TNF activity. It is less sensitive than ELISA and HMSA but highly specific for the clinical response because it detects anti-TNF activity and neutralizing anti-drug antibodies alone thus mimicking the effect of ADA *in vivo*. Steenholdt *et al*[41] recently showed that unlike HMSA and PIA which gives false positives, the results of ELISA and RGA were correlated.

The clinical relevance of low concentrations of ADA that are not detectable in drug sensitive assays has not be clarified and ELISA is actually the most commonly used test because it is easy to perform, less expensive and correlated to the cell assay detecting neutralizing ADA. However, a blood sample should be taken before the next injection and testing should not be performed on blood obtained close to when the drug is administer to be sure to measure ADA without drug interference.

CONCOMITANT USE OF IMMUNOSUPPRESSIVE

Theoretically the effect of concomitant use of immunosuppressive therapy is to reduce antibody formation, to increase the anti-TNF alpha drug in serum and to decrease drug clearance for better clinical outcomes[1].

Two studies have shown that combination therapy minimizes the immunogenicity for Infliximab and Adali-

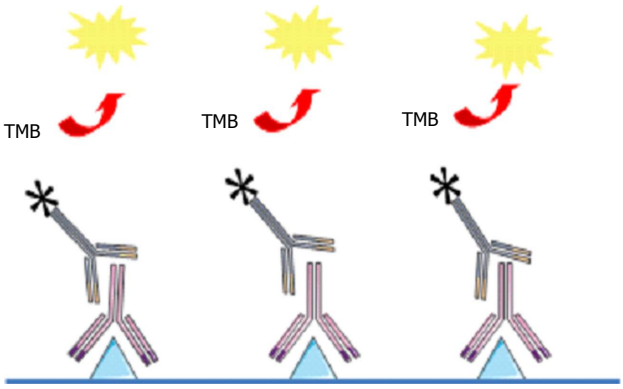


Figure 1 Adalimumab detection. TMB: 3,3',5,5'-Tetramethylbenzidine.

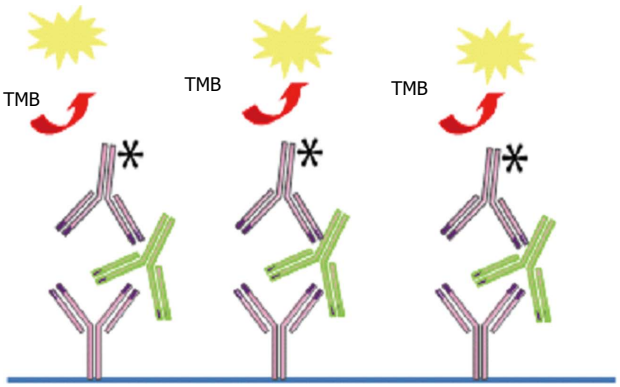


Figure 2 Anti-adalimumab antibodies detection. TMB: 3,3',5,5'-Tetramethylbenzidine.

mumab[42,43]. In Classic 2, 2.6% (n = 7) of 269 patients developed antibodies to Adalimumab and none of the patients with concomitant immunosuppressive therapy had antibodies. Among the 7 patients with antibodies, 43% were in remission 24% and 29% at week 56. A recent study by Baert *et al*[15] confirmed that concomitant use of immunosuppressive therapy prevented antibody formation. In a retrospective analysis of 148 patients, a low serum adalimumab concentration in monotherapy was found to increase the risk of antibody formation. On the contrary, a high post induction drug concentration decreased the risk of antibody formation[15].

However, in their meta-analysis Paul *et al*[3] and Mazor *et al*[22] found that concomitant immunosuppressive therapy did not influence adalimumab levels. In a retrospective study among 217 patients treated with adalimumab, van Schaik *et al*[43] found no beneficial effect of immunosuppressive co-medication for antibody formation. The limit of the study is that they did not evaluate clinical response.

A cut off value for adalimumab levels ranged from 4.8 to 5.9 g/mL whatever the method of measurement for a clinical benefit[3].

However it is important to emphasize that the cut off value depends on the dosing method which is often different in published studies. In addition most of the assays were not compared.

Clinical utility of therapeutic drug monitoring

Long lasting remission of CD can be optimized by maintaining adequate drug levels and preventing antibody formation. Defining predictors of response to anti-TNF alpha and indications for dose escalation will help clinicians choose the best therapy for the appropriate IBD patients with to maximize efficacy and minimize toxicity.

Dose escalation to weekly therapy was needed in 16 (4%) of patients during the 1st year of adalimumab therapy in a prospective study of 201 patients[44]. CRP at week 12 was predictive of clinical efficacy. Azathioprine decreased the probability of dose escalation in this study. In the CHARM trial of 260 patients, 27.3% changed to weekly dosing during the first year and an additional 13.1% changed to weekly dosing during the second year. In another study, 168 patients were followed-up for a median of 20.4 mo. All failed to response to infliximab. Sixty-seven percent responded to Adalimumab at week 12, 65% had to step up to 40 mg per week and 71% responded to the dose escalation. Discontinuation was related to low adalimumab levels and the presence of antibodies[24].

Dose escalation is effective for managing secondary loss of response in CD. One study followed-up 92 patients for 170 wk who achieved a primary response. Eighty percent had clinical response after dose escalation and 56% experienced tertiary loss of response[45]. For ulcerative colitis the rate of escalation was 38.4% for early non responders. At week 52, 25% were in remission[46]. A high body mass index (BMI) and non-response to infliximab were predictive for a dose escalation[7]. There are no pharmacologic data in these studies.

Pharmacokinetics can help select patients who will benefit from dose escalation. A study on mucosal healing has confirmed the association between trough adalimumab levels, clinical remission and mucosal healing[47].

Roblin *et al*[47] explored the clinical utility of therapeutic drug monitoring of Adalimumab in a prospective observational study. The cut off for adalimumab blood levels was 4.9 g/mL. They demonstrated that patients with low blood levels and no antibodies had a better response than patients with antibodies whatever the blood level of drug. The presence of antibodies was related to nonresponse to adalimumab.

The induction phase of treatment also influences antibody formation: Baert *et al*[15] showed that low early drug concentration after induction influenced the risk of antibody formation. These findings show the predictive value of measuring serum adalimumab concentrations early to guide treatment optimization before antibody formation and symptom occurrence. Patients with more severe inflammation require higher than average drug doses to obtain the necessary degree of drug exposure and optimum results.

The reason for discontinuation of infliximab was a clear clinical predictor of response to adalimumab. Among the primary non-responders to infliximab, short-term response to adalimumab was 36% compared to

83% in those who discontinued infliximab for other reasons. There is a clear relationship between serum drug concentrations, clinical effect and long term efficacy.

Mucosal healing has emerged as a major therapeutic goal in IBD. Roblin *et al*[47] studied the association between therapeutic drug monitoring of ADA and mucosal healing among 40 patients. They have shown that therapeutic drug monitoring of ADA was associated with clinical remission in IBD patients and the negative impact of immunogenicity. Median ADA trough levels were significantly higher in patients who achieved mucosal healing. The optimal cut-off value of ADA trough levels for predicting mucosal healing was generally similar to that observed for clinical remission.

Few studies have explored anti-TNF dosage reduction[48]. Baert *et al*[49] recently explored reduction in IFX dosage. For adalimumab, dose de-escacalation to every 2 wk after successful escalation was possible in 63% of patients. There are no pharmacokinetics data in this study.

One study evaluated Adalimumab doses in 6 patients treated after surgery for CD. Adalimumab trough levels in patients with clinical or endoscopic levels were lower than in those in clinical remission after a 2 years of follow-up[50]. More studies are needed to confirm these data.

CONCLUSION

Anti-TNF drugs are extensively prescribed for inflammatory diseases. Loss of response to adalimumab is frequent and the pharmacokinetics of anti-TNF therapy has important implications for patient management. The pharmacology of adalimumab is not completely understood in particular drug clearance. Individual factors such as albumin, body weight and CRP level also influence drug metabolism. Recent data have shown that there is a clinical benefit to the drug and antibody dosage for patient management. Adalimumab levels are associated with clinical remission. On the other hand, the detection of antibodies is associated with treatment failure. There is also a non-anti-TNF pathway in some patients with treatment failure and another therapeutic should then be proposed. New algorithms are available to provide personal treatment and dose adaptations. More data are needed for dose de-escalation. Monitoring drug levels and optimization of treatment without clinical relapse has not been confirmed in clinical practice.

REFERENCES

1 **Ordás I**, Feagan BG, Sandborn WJ. Therapeutic drug monitoring of tumor necrosis factor antagonists in inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1079-1087; quiz e85-86 [PMID: 22813440 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.06.032]

2 **Mould DR**, Dubinsky MC. Dashboard systems: Pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic mediated dose optimization for monoclonal antibodies. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2015; **55** Suppl 3: S51-S59 [PMID: 25707964 DOI: 10.1002/jcph.370]

3 **Paul S**, Moreau AC, Del Tedesco E, Rinaudo M, Phelip JM, Genin C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Roblin X. Pharmacokinetics of adalimumab in inflammatory bowel diseases: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 1288-1295 [PMID: 24831559 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000037]

4 **Ordás I**, Mould DR, Feagan BG, Sandborn WJ. Anti-TNF monoclonal antibodies in inflammatory bowel disease: pharmacokinetics-based dosing paradigms. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **91**: 635-646 [PMID: 22357456 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2011.328]

5 **Affronti A**, Orlando A, Cottone M. An update on medical management on Crohn's disease. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2015; **16**: 63-78 [PMID: 25418125 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2015.981525]

6 **Stidham RW**, Lee TC, Higgins PD, Deshpande AR, Sussman DA, Singal AG, Elmunzer BJ, Saini SD, Vijan S, Waljee AK. Systematic review with network meta-analysis: the efficacy of anti-TNF agents for the treatment of Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 1349-1362 [PMID: 24749763 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12749]

7 **Bultman E**, de Haar C, van Liere-Baron A, Verhoog H, West RL, Kuipers EJ, Zelinkova Z, van der Woude CJ. Predictors of dose escalation of adalimumab in a prospective cohort of Crohn's disease patients. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 335-341 [PMID: 22191671 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04946.x]

8 **Sandborn WJ**, Colombel JF, Schreiber S, Plevy SE, Pollack PF, Robinson AM, Chao J, Mulani P. Dosage adjustment during long-term adalimumab treatment for Crohn's disease: clinical efficacy and pharmacoeconomics. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 141-151 [PMID: 20848500 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21328]

9 **Khanna R**, Bouguen G, Feagan BG, D'Haens G, Sandborn WJ, Dubcenco E, Baker KA, Levesque BG. A systematic review of measurement of endoscopic disease activity and mucosal healing in Crohn's disease: recommendations for clinical trial design. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 1850-1861 [PMID: 25029615 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000131]

10 **Mould DR**, Frame B. Population pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling of biological agents: when modeling meets reality. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2010; **50**: 91S-100S [PMID: 20881222 DOI: 10.1177/0091270010376965]

11 **Moss AC**, Brinks V, Carpenter JF. Review article: immunogenicity of anti-TNF biologics in IBD - the role of patient, product and prescriber factors. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 1188-1197 [PMID: 24118102 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12507]

12 **Fasanmade AA**, Adedokun OJ, Ford J, Hernandez D, Johanns J, Hu C, Davis HM, Zhou H. Population pharmacokinetic analysis of infliximab in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2009; **65**: 1211-1228 [PMID: 19756557 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-009-0718-4]

13 **Baert F**, Vande Casteele N, Tops S, Noman M, Van Assche G, Rutgeerts P, Gils A, Vermeire S, Ferrante M. Prior response to infliximab and early serum drug concentrations predict effects of adalimumab in ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 1324-1332 [PMID: 25277873 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12968]

14 **Fasanmade AA**, Adedokun OJ, Olson A, Strauss R, Davis HM. Serum albumin concentration: a predictive factor of infliximab pharmacokinetics and clinical response in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **48**: 297-308 [PMID: 20420786]

15 **Baert F,** Kondragunta V, Lockton S, Vande Casteele N, Hauenstein S, Singh S, Karmiris K, Ferrante M, Gils A, Vermeire S. Antibodies to adalimumab are associated with future inflammation in Crohn's patients receiving maintenance adalimumab therapy: a post hoc analysis of the Karmiris trial. *Gut* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25862647 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307882]

16 **Lie MR**, Peppelenbosch MP, West RL, Zelinkova Z, van der Woude CJ. Adalimumab in Crohn's disease patients: pharmacokinetics in the first 6 months of treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 1202-1208 [PMID: 25263077 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12969]

17 **Garcês S**, Demengeot J, Benito-Garcia E. The immunogenicity of anti-TNF therapy in immune-mediated inflammatory diseases: a systematic review of the literature with a meta-analysis. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2013; **72**: 1947-1955 [PMID: 23223420 DOI: 10.1136/annrheumdis-2012-202220]

18 **van Schouwenburg PA**, Rispens T, Wolbink GJ. Immunogenicity of anti-TNF biologic therapies for rheumatoid arthritis. *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 2013; **9**: 164-172 [PMID: 23399692 DOI: 10.1038/nrrheum.2013.4]

19 **Maser EA**, Villela R, Silverberg MS, Greenberg GR. Association of trough serum infliximab to clinical outcome after scheduled maintenance treatment for Crohn's disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 1248-1254 [PMID: 16931170 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.06.025]

20 **Takeuchi T**, Miyasaka N, Tatsuki Y, Yano T, Yoshinari T, Abe T, Koike T. Baseline tumour necrosis factor alpha levels predict the necessity for dose escalation of infliximab therapy in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2011; **70**: 1208-1215 [PMID: 21478189 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2011.153023]

21 **Baert F**, Noman M, Vermeire S, Van Assche G, D' Haens G, Carbonez A, Rutgeerts P. Influence of immunogenicity on the long-term efficacy of infliximab in Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 601-608 [PMID: 12584368 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa020888]

22 **Mazor Y**, Almog R, Kopylov U, Ben Hur D, Blatt A, Dahan A, Waterman M, Ben-Horin S, Chowers Y. Adalimumab drug and antibody levels as predictors of clinical and laboratory response in patients with Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 620-628 [PMID: 25039584 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12869]

23 **West RL**, Zelinkova Z, Wolbink GJ, Kuipers EJ, Stokkers PC, van der Woude CJ. Immunogenicity negatively influences the outcome of adalimumab treatment in Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 1122-1126 [PMID: 18691349 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03828.x]

24 **Karmiris K**, Paintaud G, Noman M, Magdelaine-Beuzelin C, Ferrante M, Degenne D, Claes K, Coopman T, Van Schuerbeek N, Van Assche G, Vermeire S, Rutgeerts P. Influence of trough serum levels and immunogenicity on long-term outcome of adalimumab therapy in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1628-1640 [PMID: 19664627 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.07.062]

25 **Sandborn WJ**, Hanauer SB, Rutgeerts P, Fedorak RN, Lukas M, MacIntosh DG, Panaccione R, Wolf D, Kent JD, Bittle B, Li J, Pollack PF. Adalimumab for maintenance treatment of Crohn's disease: results of the CLASSIC II trial. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1232-1239 [PMID: 17299059 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.106781]

26 **Ungar B**, Chowers Y, Yavzori M, Picard O, Fudim E, Har-Noy O, Kopylov U, Eliakim R, Ben-Horin S. The temporal evolution of antidrug antibodies in patients with inflammatory bowel disease treated with infliximab. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1258-1264 [PMID: 24041539 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-305259]

27 **Vincent FB**, Morand EF, Murphy K, Mackay F, Mariette X, Marcelli C. Antidrug antibodies (ADAb) to tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-specific neutralising agents in chronic inflammatory diseases: a real issue, a clinical perspective. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2013; **72**: 165-178 [PMID: 23178294 DOI: 10.1136/annrheumdis-2012-202545]

28 **Frederiksen MT**, Ainsworth MA, Brynskov J, Thomsen OO, Bendtzen K, Steenholdt C. Antibodies against infliximab are associated with de novo development of antibodies to adalimumab and therapeutic failure in infliximab-to-adalimumab switchers with IBD. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 1714-1721 [PMID: 25069030 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000138]

29 **van Schouwenburg PA**, Krieckaert CL, Rispens T, Aarden L, Wolbink GJ, Wouters D. Long-term measurement of anti-adalimumab using pH-shift-anti-idiotype antigen binding test shows predictive value and transient antibody formation. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2013; **72**: 1680-1686 [PMID: 23300118 DOI: 10.1136/annrheumdis-2012-202407]

30 **Bartelds GM**, Wijbrandts CA, Nurmohamed MT, Stapel S, Lems WF, Aarden L, Dijkmans BA, Tak PP, Wolbink GJ. Anti-infliximab and anti-adalimumab antibodies in relation to response to adalimumab in infliximab switchers and anti-tumour necrosis factor naive patients: a cohort study. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2010; **69**: 817-821 [PMID: 19581278 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2009.112847]

31 **Bartelds GM**, Krieckaert CL, Nurmohamed MT, van Schouwenburg PA, Lems WF, Twisk JW, Dijkmans BA, Aarden L, Wolbink GJ. Development of antidrug antibodies against adalimumab and association with disease activity and treatment failure during long-term follow-up. *JAMA* 2011; **305**: 1460-1468 [PMID: 21486979 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.406]

32 **Paul S**, Dronne W, Roblin X. Kinetics of Antibodies Against Adalimumab Are Not Associated With Poor Outcomes in IBD. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 777-778 [PMID: 25942310 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2015.79]

33 **Yanai H**, Lichtenstein L, Assa A, Mazor Y, Weiss B, Levine A, Ron Y, Kopylov U, Bujanover Y, Rosenbach Y, Ungar B, Eliakim R, Chowers Y, Shamir R, Fraser G, Dotan I, Ben-Horin S. Levels of drug and antidrug antibodies are associated with outcome of interventions after loss of response to infliximab or adalimumab. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 522-530.e2 [PMID: 25066837 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.07.029]

34 **Roblin X**, Rinaudo M, Del Tedesco E, Phelip JM, Genin C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Paul S. Development of an algorithm incorporating pharmacokinetics of adalimumab in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1250-1256 [PMID: 24913041 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.146]

35 **Bendtzen K**. Immunogenicity of Anti-TNF-α Biotherapies: II. Clinical Relevance of Methods Used for Anti-Drug Antibody Detection. *Front Immunol* 2015; **6**: 109 [PMID: 25904911 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00109]

36 **Imaeda H**, Takahashi K, Fujimoto T, Bamba S, Tsujikawa T, Sasaki M, Fujiyama Y, Andoh A. Clinical utility of newly developed immunoassays for serum concentrations of adalimumab and anti-adalimumab antibodies in patients with Crohn's disease. *J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 100-109 [PMID: 23575576 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-013-0803-4]

37 **van Schouwenburg PA**, Bartelds GM, Hart MH, Aarden L, Wolbink GJ, Wouters D. A novel method for the detection of antibodies to adalimumab in the presence of drug reveals "hidden" immunogenicity in rheumatoid arthritis patients. *J Immunol Methods* 2010; **362**: 82-88 [PMID: 20833178 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2010.09.005]

38 **Kopylov U**, Mazor Y, Yavzori M, Fudim E, Katz L, Coscas D, Picard O, Chowers Y, Eliakim R, Ben-Horin S. Clinical utility of antihuman lambda chain-based enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) versus double antigen ELISA for the detection of anti-infliximab antibodies. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2012; **18**: 1628-1633 [PMID: 22038899 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21919]

39 **Wang SL**, Ohrmund L, Hauenstein S, Salbato J, Reddy R, Monk P, Lockton S, Ling N, Singh S. Development and validation of a homogeneous mobility shift assay for the measurement of infliximab and antibodies-to-infliximab levels in patient serum. *J Immunol Methods* 2012; **382**: 177-188 [PMID: 22691619 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2012.06.002]

40 **Lallemand C**, Meritet JF, Blanchard B, Lebon P, Tovey MG. One-step assay for quantification of neutralizing antibodies to biopharmaceuticals. *J Immunol Methods* 2010; **356**: 18-28 [PMID: 20298696 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2010.03.003]

41 **Steenholdt C**, Bendtzen K, Brynskov J, Thomsen OØ, Ainsworth MA. Clinical implications of measuring drug and anti-drug antibodies by different assays when optimizing infliximab treatment failure in Crohn's disease: post hoc analysis of a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1055-1064 [PMID: 24796769 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.106]

42 **Colombel JF**, Sandborn WJ, Reinisch W, Mantzaris GJ, Kornbluth A, Rachmilewitz D, Lichtiger S, D'Haens G, Diamond RH, Broussard DL, Tang KL, van der Woude CJ, Rutgeerts P. Infliximab, azathioprine, or combination therapy for Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1383-1395 [PMID: 20393175 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0904492]

43 **van Schaik T**, Maljaars JP, Roopram RK, Verwey MH, Ipenburg N, Hardwick JC, Veenendaal RA, van der Meulen-de Jong AE. Influence of combination therapy with immune modulators on anti-TNF trough levels and antibodies in patients with IBD. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 2292-2298 [PMID: 25230167 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000208]

44 **Kiss LS**, Szamosi T, Molnar T, Miheller P, Lakatos L, Vincze A,

Palatka K, Barta Z, Gasztonyi B, Salamon A, Horvath G, Tóth GT, Farkas K, Banai J, Tulassay Z, Nagy F, Szenes M, Veres G, Lovasz BD, Vegh Z, Golovics PA, Szathmari M, Papp M, Lakatos PL. Early clinical remission and normalisation of CRP are the strongest predictors of efficacy, mucosal healing and dose escalation during the first year of adalimumab therapy in Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 911-922 [PMID: 21883326 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04827.x]

45 **Ma C**, Huang V, Fedorak DK, Kroeker KI, Dieleman LA, Halloran BP, Fedorak RN. Adalimumab dose escalation is effective for managing secondary loss of response in Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 1044-1055 [PMID: 25185992 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12940]

46 **Wolf D**, D'Haens G, Sandborn WJ, Colombel JF, Van Assche G, Robinson AM, Lazar A, Zhou Q, Petersson J, Thakkar RB. Escalation to weekly dosing recaptures response in adalimumab-treated patients with moderately to severely active ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 486-497 [PMID: 25041859 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12863]

47 **Roblin X**, Marotte H, Rinaudo M, Del Tedesco E, Moreau A, Phelip JM, Genin C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Paul S. Association between pharmacokinetics of adalimumab and mucosal healing in patients with inflammatory bowel diseases. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 80-84.e2 [PMID: 23891927 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.07.010]

48 **Pariente B**, Laharie D. Review article: why, when and how to de-escalate therapy in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 338-353 [PMID: 24957164 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12838]

49 **Baert F**, Glorieus E, Reenaers C, D'Haens G, Peeters H, Franchimont D, Dewit O, Caenepeel P, Louis E, Van Assche G. Adalimumab dose escalation and dose de-escalation success rate and predictors in a large national cohort of Crohn's patients. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 154-160 [PMID: 22537637 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.03.018]

50 **Bodini G**, Savarino V, Peyrin-Biroulet L, de Cassan C, Dulbecco P, Baldissarro I, Fazio V, Giambruno E, Savarino E. Low serum trough levels are associated with post-surgical recurrence in Crohn's disease patients undergoing prophylaxis with adalimumab. *Dig Liver Dis* 2014; **46**: 1043-1046 [PMID: 25169962 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2014.07.171]

P- Reviewer: Akiho H **S- Editor**: Qi Y
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Li D

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

World J Pharmacol 2016 June 9; 5(2): 51-58

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJP World Journal of Pharmacology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2016-2019

The *World Journal of Pharmacology* Editorial Board consists of 455 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in pharmacology. They are from 42 countries, including Australia (13), Austria (3), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (3), Bulgaria (1), Canada (12), Chile (2), China (46), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (2), Egypt (1), Finland (3), France (13), Germany (7), Greece (17), Hungary (6), Iceland (1), India (11), Iran (4), Ireland (1), Israel (12), Italy (39), Japan (30), Malaysia (1), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Russia (1), Saint Kitts and Nevis (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Serbia (1), Singapore (7), South Korea (9), Spain (22), Sweden (4), Switzerland (2), Thailand (1), Turkey (6), United Kingdom (19), and United States (131).

Ke Lan, *Chengdu*
George Pak-Heng Leung, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Jun Li, *Beijing*
Zhi-Xiu Lin, *Hong Kong*
Xiao-Dong Liu, *Nanjing*
Xin-Yong Liu, *Jinan*
Liang Peng, *Shenyang*
Mei Qiang, *Taiyuan*
Yong-Yong Shi, *Shanghai*
Jing-Fang Wang, *Shanghai*
Yong-Qing Wang, *Nanjing*
Chi-Ming Wong, *Hong Kong*
William Ka Kei Wu, *Hong Kong*
Ruian Xu, *Xiamen*
Xiao-Qiang Yao, *Hong Kong*
Wei-Hai Ying, *Shanghai*
Shu-Biao Zhang, *Dalian*
Yu Zhang, *Beijing*

Czech Republic

Kamil Kuca, *Hradec Kralove*

Denmark

Morten Grunnet, *Ballerup*
Yasser A Mahmmoud, *Aarhus*

Egypt

Nagwa MN El-Din, *Alexandria*

Finland

Seppo Kahkonen, *Helsinki*
Hannu I Kankaanranta, *Seinajoki*
Helder A Santos, *Helsinki*

France

Eric Boue-Grabot, *Bordeaux*
Christian Bronner, *Illkirch*
Rene Bruno, *Marseille*
Marie-Chantal Canivenc-Lavier, *Dijon*
Bertrand Cariou, *Nantes*
Emmanuelle Corruble, *Le Kremlin Bicêtre*
Gerard,Siest, *Nancy*
Laurent Karila, *Villejuif*
Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
Tangui Maurice, *Montpellier*
Fernando Rodrigues-Lima, *Paris*
Jean-Marc Sabatier, *Rousset*
Steeve H Thany, *Angers*

Germany

Axel Becker, *Magdeburg*
Thomas Efferth, *Mainz*
Florian Lang, *Tuebingen*
Huige Li, *Mainz*
Frank Thevenod, *Witten*
Michael Wink, *Heidelberg*
Jianbo Xiao, *Würzburg*

Greece

Panagiotis G Anagnostis, *Thessaloniki*
Charalambos Antoniades, *Athens*
Ekaterini Chatzaki, *Alexandroupolis*
Vassilis J Demopoulos, *Thessaloniki*
Moses S Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Panagiotis P Ferentinos, *Athens*
Dimitrios Galaris, *Ioannina*
Tzortzis Nomikos, *Athens*
Constantinos M Paleos, *Aghia PAraskevi*
George Panagis, *Rethymno*
Andreas Papapetropoulos, *Patras*
Kosmas I Paraskevas, *Athens*
George P Patrinos, *Patras*
Evangelos Rizos, *Ioannina*
Despina Sanoudou, *Athens*
Konstantinos N Syrigos, *Athens*
Ioannis S Vizirianakis, *Thessaloniki*

Hungary

Albert Császár, *Budapest*
Peter Hamar, *Budapest*
Peter Krajcsi, *Budaors*
Gabor Maksay, *Budapest*
Attila J Miseta, *Cserkut*
Joseph Molnar, *Szeged*

Iceland

Hekla Sigmundsdottir, *Reykjavik*

India

VN Balaji, *Bangalore*
Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
Naibedya Chattopadhyay, *Lucknow*
Swaran JS Flora, *Gwalior*
Rumi Ghosh, *Mumbai*
Srinivas Gopala, *Thiruvananthapuram*
Seetharamappa Jaldappagari, *Dharwad*
Noboru Motohashi,
Basavaraj K Nanjwade, *Karnataka*
Kishore M Paknikar, *Pune*
Vikas Anand Saharan, *Uttarakhand*
Abdus Samad, *Mumbai*

Iran

Payman Adibi, *Isfahan*
Ahmad R Dehpour, *Tehran*
Mehrdad Hamidi, *Zanjan*
Arash Mowla, *Shiraz*

Ireland

Marek W Radomski, *Dublin*

Israel

Galila Agam, *Beer-Sheva*
Robert H Belmaker, *Beer Sheva*
Shomron Ben-Horin, *Tel-Hashomer*
Arik Dahan, *Beer-Sheva*
Hagit Eldar-Finkelman, *Rehovot*
Eliezer Flescher, *Tel Aviv*
Moshe Gavish, *Haifa*
Israel Hanukoglu, *Ariel*
Joseph Kost, *Beer-Shiva*
Irena Manov, *Haifa*
Mordechai Muszkat, *Jerusalem*
Michal Schwartz, *Rehovot*

Italy

Giuseppe Barbaro, *Rome*
Francesca Borrelli, *Napoli*
Franco Borsini, *Pomezia*
Silvio Caccia, *Milan*
Giuseppe M Campo, *Messina*
Raffaele Capasso, *Naples*
Mauro AM Carai, *Cagliari*
Dario Cattaneo, *Milan*
Davide Cervia, *Viterbo*
Giuseppe Cirino, *Napoli*
Emilio Clementi, *Milano*
Massimo Collino, *Torino*
Vincenzo Cuomo, *Rome*
Francesca Fallarino, *Perugia*
Tullio Florio, *Genova*
Vittorio Gentile, *Naples*
Guido Grassi, *Milan*
Mario Grassi, *Trieste*
Annalisa Guaragna, *Napoli*
Milena Gusella, *Trecenta*
Francesco Impagnatiello, *Milan*
Angelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Luca La Colla, *Parma*
Aurelio Leone, *Castelnuovo Magra*
Mauro Magnani, *Urbino*
Mario Marchi, *Genoa*
Silvia Marinelli, *Rome*
Robert Nistico, *Rome*
Francesco Parmeggiani, *Ferrara*
Sabina Passamonti, *Trieste*
Emilio Perucca, *Pavia*
Carlo Riccardi, *Perugia*
Graziano Riccioni, *Chieti*
Sergio Rutella, *Rome*
Gianni Sava, *Trieste*
Pier A Serra, *Sassari*
Luca Steardo, *Roma*
Claudiu T Supuran, *Florence*
Gianluca Tettamanti, *Varese*

Japan

Katsuya Dezaki, *Tochigi*
Jun Fang, *Kumamoto*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Mitsuko Furuya, *Yokohama*
Osamu Handa, *Kyoto*
Kenji Hashimoto, *Chiba*
Zhi-Qing Hu, *Tokyo*
Peng Huang, *Okayama*
Toru Kobayashi, *Niigata*
Hiroshi Kunugi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Makishima, *Itabashi-ku*

Makoto Makishima, *Tokyo*
Takayuki Masaki, *Oita*
Shin-Ichiro Miura, *Fukuoka*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Satomi Onoue, *Shizuoka*
Honoo Satake, *Osaka*
Masaharu Seno, *Okayama*
Yasuyuki Shimada, *AKITA*
Mitsushige Sugimoto, *Shiga*
Masafumi Takahashi, *Tochigi*
Shinji Takai, *Takatsuki*
Yoh Takuwa, *Kanazawa*
Shingo Tsuji, *Osaka*
Hirokazu Tsukahara, *Fukui*
Motoko Unoki, *Fukuoka*
Shizuo Yamada, *Shizuoka*
Norio Yasui-Furukori, *Hirosaki*
Yukio Yoneda, *Kanazawa*

Malaysia

Johnson Stanslas, *Serdang*

Netherlands

Arjan Blokland, *Maastricht*
Eliyahu Dremencov, *Groningen*
Elisa Giovannetti, *Amsterdam*
Hidde J Haisma, *Groningen*
Frank A Redegeld, *Utrecht*
Martina Schmidt, *Groningen*
Frederik M van der Veen, *Rotterdam*
Charles J Vecht, *The Hague*
Joris C Verster, *Utrecht*

New Zealand

Hesham Al-Sallami, *Dunedin*
Lin Yang, *Dunedin*

Poland

Thomas Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Wladyslawa A Daniel, *Krakow*
Andrzej Pilc, *Krakow*

Portugal

Bruno Sarmento, *Porto*
Cristina M Sena, *Coimbra*

Russia

Roman G Efremov, *Moscow*

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Ignacio Lizarraga, *Basseterre*

Saudi Arabia

Mohamed AA Haidara, *Abha*

Serbia

Milan Jokanovic, *Belgrade*

Singapore

Jinsong Bian, *Singapore*
Gavin S Dawe, *Singapore*
Chang Ming Li, *Singapore*
Haishu Lin, *Singapore*
Rajkumar Ramamoorthy, *Singapore*
Gautam Sethi, *Singapore*

South Korea

Ki Churl Chang, *Jinju*
Joohun Ha, *Seoul*
Sang June Hahn, *Seoul*
Byeongmoon Jeong, *Seoul*
Myung Gull Lee, *Gyeonggi-Do*
Won Suk Lee, *Gyeongsangnam-do*
Seung-Yeol Nah, *Seoul*
Kyoungho Suk, *Daegu*
Young-Hyun Yoo, *Busan*

Spain

José L Arias-Mediano, *Granada*
Pedro E Bermejo, *Majadahonda*
Fermin Sánchez de Medina LH, *Granada*
Guillermo Elizondo, *Mexico City*
Leandro Fernandez-Perez, *Las Palmas*
Cristina Fillat, *Barcelona*
J Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Mexico*
Angel LM Gonzalez, *Salamanca*
Tomas Herraiz, *Madrid*
Miguel JA Lainez, *Valencia*
Jose M Lanao, *Salamanca*
ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Vicente Martinez, *Bellaterra*
Faustino Mollinedo, *Salamanca*
Virginia Motilva, *Sevilla*
Gorka Orive, *Victoria*
Ricardo E Perez-Tomas, *Barcelona*
Susana Rodriguez-Couto, *Donostia-San Sebastian*
María E Sáez, *Seville*
Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Juan L Tamargo, *Madrid*
Salvador V Zamora, *Barcelona*

Sweden

Aleksander A Mathe, *Stockholm*
Hari S Sharma, *Uppsala*
Marie-Louise G Wadenberg, *Kalmar*
Cang-Bao Xu, *Lund*

Switzerland

Stefan J Borgwardt, *Basel*
Felicien Karege, *Geneva*

Thailand

Kanokwan Jarukamjorn, *Khon Kaen*

Turkey

Cengiz A Akkaya, *Bursa*
Fatih Canan, *Antalya*
Saygin S Eker, *Bursa*
Sule Apikoglu Rabus, *Istanbul*
Nese Tuncel, *Eskisehir*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*

United Kingdom

Sabine Bahn, *Cambridge*
Christopher J Bushe, *New Malden*
David J Chambers, *London*
Rossen M Donev, *Swansea*
Marco Falasca, *London*
David J Grieve, *Belfast*
Alan J Hargreaves, *Nottingham*
Mahmoud M Iravani, *London*
Nigel Irwin, *Coleraine*
Lin-Hua Jiang, *Leeds*
Veena Kumari, *London*
Kim Lawson, *Sheffield*
Debbi MacMillan, *Glasgow*
Elek Molnár, *Bristol*
Stuart A Rushworth, *Norwich*
Sunita Suri, *Nottingham*
Jinsheng Xu, *Bristol*
Alexander V Zholos, *Belfast*

United States

James D Adams, *Los Angeles*
Nihal Ahmad, *Madison*
Gustav Akk, *St. Louis*
Karim A Alkadhi, *Houston*
Charles Antzelevitch, *Utica*
Hugo R Arias, *Glendale*
Dominick L Auci, *San Diego*
Ross J Baldessarini, *Belmont*
Oleg A Barski, *Louisville*
Bjorn Bauer, *Duluth*
Chengpeng Bi, *Kansas City*
Karina S Blair, *Bethesda*
Bortolato,Marco, *Los Angeles*
Josh Burk, *Williamsburg*
William K Chan, *Stockton*
James J Chen, *Jefferson City*
Zhe-Sheng Chen, *Queens*
Beek Y Chin, *Boston*
Olivier Civelli, *Irvine*
John A Dani, *Houston*
Keith M Erikson, *Greensboro*
Eric R Fedyk, *Cambridge*
Pingfu Feng, *Cleveland*
William D Figg, *Bethesda*
Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
Masayuki Fukata, *Miami*
Bolin Geng, *Waltham*
Arup K Ghose, *West Chester*
Alasdair M Gilfillan, *Bethesda*
Neeraj Gupta, *Cambridge*

WJP World Journal of Pharmacology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 5 Number 2 June 9, 2016

MINIREVIEWS

World Journal of Pharmacology
Volume 5 Number 2 June 9, 2016

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Pharmacology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 9, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

World Journal of Pharmacology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
June 9, 2016

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i2.51

World J Pharmacol 2016 June 9; 5(2): 51-58
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Long-term potentiation in autonomic ganglia: Potential role in cardiovascular disorders

Karim A Alkadhi

Karim A Alkadhi, Department of Pharmacological and Pharmaceutical Sciences, College of Pharmacy, University of Houston, Houston, TX 77204, United States

Author contributions: Alkadhi KA contributed all to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Alkadhi KA declares no conflict of interest related to this publication.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Karim A Alkadhi, PhD, Professor, Department of Pharmacological and Pharmaceutical Sciences, College of Pharmacy, University of Houston, SR-2, Cullen Blvd, Houston, TX 77204, United States. kalkadhi@uh.edu
Telephone: +1-713-7431212
Fax: +1-713-7431229

Received: April 22, 2016
Peer-review started: April 28, 2016
First decision: May 13, 2016
Revised: May 21, 2016
Accepted: May 27, 2016
Article in press: June 2, 2016
Published online: June 9, 2016

Abstract

Ganglionic long-term potentiation (gLTP) is an activity-dependent, enduring enhancement of ganglionic transmission. This phenomenon may be induced in autonomic ganglia of an organism under certain conditions where repetitive impulses surge from the central nervous system (CNS) to the periphery. Chronic stress, repetitive epileptic seizure or chronic use of CNS stimulants could induce gLTP, which would result in a long lasting heightening of sympathetic tone to the cardiovascular system causing hypertension and disturbed cardiac rhythm that may lead to sudden cardiac death. These conditions are briefly reviewed in this article.

Key words: Electrophysiology; Epilepsy; Ganglionic long-term potentiation; Sudden unexpected death in epilepsy; Central nervous system stimulants; Sudden cardiac death

Core tip: Heightened activity of the central nervous system (CNS) caused by epilepsy, chronic stress and CNS stimulants could provide strong preganglionic stimulation of autonomic ganglia, which may trigger expression of ganglionic long-term potentiation (gLTP). Expression of gLTP can result in cardiovascular dysfunction that may lead to morbidity and even mortality.

Alkadhi KA. Long-term potentiation in autonomic ganglia: Potential role in cardiovascular disorders. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(2): 51-58 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i2/51.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i2.51

INTRODUCTION

Before Bliss and Lomo[1] coined the term "long-term potentiation (LTP)" in the hippocampus to describe activity-dependent long-lasting potentiation, similar activity-induced enhancement of synaptic transmission was described in the mammalian sympathetic ganglia[2,3]. However, it was nearly two decades before ganglionic LTP

Table 1 Summery of studies reporting ganglionic long-term potentiation of the nicotinic pathway in various animal species

Animal species	Specific ganglia	Ref.
Rat	Superior cervical ganglion	Brown and McAfee[4] Briggs and McAfee[6] Alkadhi *et al*[15] Alzoubi *et al*[25] Alkadhi *et al*[28] Alkadhi *et al*[29] Alkadhi and Alzoubi[36] Alzoubi *et al*[30]
Cat	Superior cervical, lumbar and stellate ganglia	Alonso-deFlorida *et al*[7] Bachoo and Polosa[8]
Guinea pig	Superior cervical ganglion	Weinreich *et al*[9]
Chick	Parasympathetic ciliary ganglion	Scott and Bennett[14]
Bullfrog	Sympathetic ganglia	Koyano *et al*[11] Kumamoto and Kuba[13] Minota *et al*[10]

Adapted from Alkadhi K, Alzoubi K. In: Sudden Death in Epilepsy: Forensic and Clinical Issues (Chapter 26). CRC Press, 2011: 395-426.

Table 2 Effects of various 5-HT$_3$ receptor agonists and antagonists on compound action potential during ganglionic long-term potentiation induced *in vitro* by high frequency repetitive stimulation

Serotonergic drugs	Mode of action	Compound AP
Serotonin (10-20 μmol/L)	Agonist	Increased
Fluoxetine (10 μmol/L)	SSRI	Increased
m-CPBG (1 μmol/L)	Receptor agonist	Increased
Tropisetron (5 μmol/L)	Receptor antagonist	Reduced
Ondansetron (5 μmol/L)	Receptor antagonist	Reduced
MDL 72222 (0.5 μmol/L)	Receptor antagonist	Reduced
Reserpine pretreatment (3 mg/kg)	5-HT$_3$ depletion	No gLTP
m-CPBG (1 μmol/L) + reserpine	Receptor agonist	Increased

The same drugs produced no significant effect on basal synaptic transmission in control ganglia (adapted from ref. [15,25,29,30,32,33,36]). SSRI: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor; AP: Action potential.

(gLTP) was characterized in mammalian and amphibian sympathetic ganglia[4-13] as well as avian parasympathetic ciliary ganglion[14] (Table 1). Later, my laboratory identified serotonin as the neurotransmitter necessary for induction and maintenance of gLTP in the rat superior cervical ganglion[15].

The expression of gLTP is due to a series of events resulting from both the postsynaptic and presynaptic regions, and including activation of enzymes, modulators and second messengers. Whereas LTP of the central nervous system (CNS) is regarded as a cellular mechanism of memory; the function of gLTP is uncertain. It is clear that hyperactivity of the CNS, as in the case of chronic stress or recurrent epileptic seizures, may provide the high frequency stimulation (HFS) necessary to induce the expression of LTP in autonomic ganglia, which may cause deleterious alterations in the cardiovascular system function.

gLTP is induced by repetitive HFS (20 Hz) of preganglionic nerve. Upon cessation of HFS of the preganglionic nerve of rat superior cervical ganglion, test stimuli (0.017 Hz) evoke initial highly potentiated ganglionic responses (compound action potentials), lasting up to 4 min, called post-tetanic potentiation[15-17]. This is followed by steady lesser-potentiated action potentials lasting up to 3 h, indicating an increase in synaptic strength[15,18-20].

Published work from this laboratory determined that initiation of gLTP entails both HFS of the preganglionic nerve and stimulation of 5-HT$_3$ receptors by serotonin originating from certain cells within the superior cervical ganglion of rat[15]. Activation of 5-HT$_3$ receptors is necessary for both initiation and expression of gLTP[15]. Extracellular recording revealed that, in ganglia that have expressed gLTP, serotonin 5-HT$_3$ receptor agonists and blockers, in concentrations comparable to pharmacological doses in clinical settings, have profound effects on the magnitude of gLTP[15] (Table 2), even though the same agents produced no significant effect on basal transmission in ganglia from control rat[15]. Thus, we have established gLTP as the first serotonin-dependent LTP ever reported in a mammalian species[21,22].

The 5-HT$_3$ receptor is a ligand-gated receptor-channel complex, and a member of the superfamily that also includes the nACh receptor[23]. It is known that activation of the presynaptic 5-HT$_3$ receptor causes upsurges in calcium concentration inside rat brain nerve terminals[24]. The role of 5-HT$_3$ receptor in the induction and maintenance of gLTP is presently unclear. Perhaps the activation of 5-HT$_3$ channel-receptor complex at the nerve terminals in ganglia causes localized entry of calcium ions increasing its intracellular concentration to a level adequate for activation of downstream signaling molecules, including protein kinase C (PKC), calmodulin and calcium-calmodulin kinase Ⅱ (CaMKⅡ), which are essential for expressing gLTP[25].

IN VITRO INDUCTION OF GLTP

gLTP can be induced by HFS (20 Hz for 20 s) of the preganglionic sympathetic nerve. This frequency is within the maximum range of *in vivo* firing frequency of preganglionic neurons[26]. The response may be measured *in vitro* by intracellular or extracellular recording techniques[6]. Furthermore, gLTP has been evoked and recorded *in situ* from ganglia of anesthetized animals[7,8,27].

The LTP of the hippocampal CA1 region and gLTP are similar in various aspects. For example, both are saturable in that when fully expressed, another HFS will not cause additional augmentation of synaptic trans-

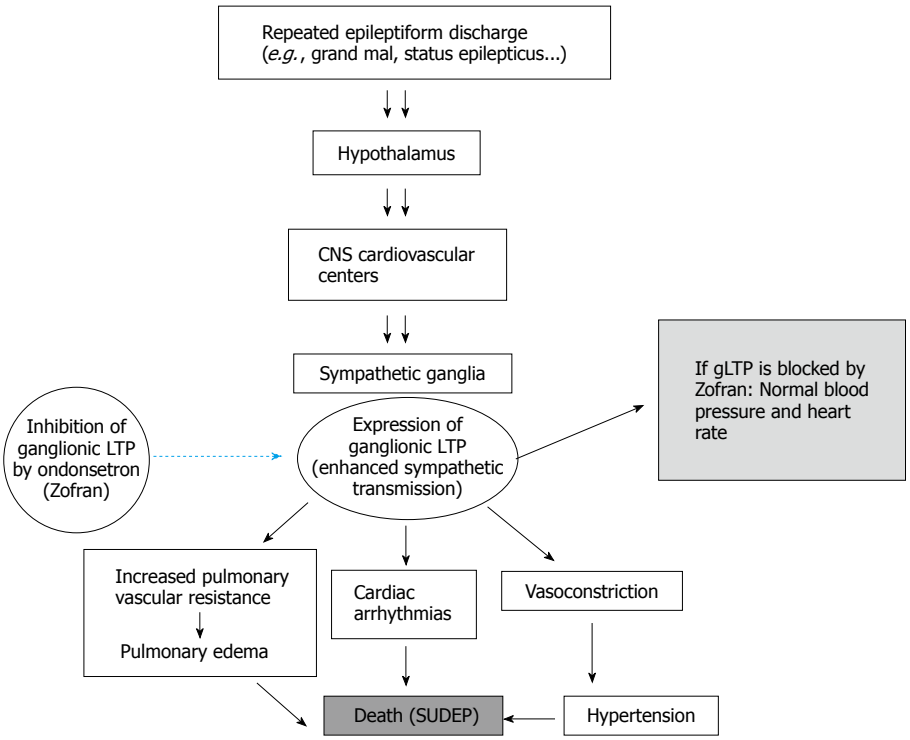


Figure 1 The hypothesis: In the whole animal, epileptic seizures provide the repetitive stimulation required for the expression of ganglionic long-term potentiation in sympathetic ganglia, resulting in increased peripheral resistance, hypertension and cardiopulmonary dysregulation leading to sudden death. Blocking serotonin 5-HT$_3$ receptor with antagonist (Zofran©) in ganglia has been shown to obviate the effect of gLTP. gLTP: Ganglionic long-term potentiation; CNS: Central nervous system; SUDEP: Sudden unexpected death in epilepsy.

mission[28]. Experiments in rat sympathetic ganglia suggest similar molecular mechanisms for the expression of gLTP and hippocampal LTP[29]. Both require a ligand-gated ion channel; here is where hippocampal LTP and gLTP differ: Whereas area CA1 hippocampal LTP requires activation of glutamate NMDA receptor, gLTP requires activation of serotonin 5-HT$_3$ receptor. Similar to NMDA receptor, 5-HT$_3$ receptor is very permeable to Ca^{2+}, which is exceedingly important for launching the molecular cascades responsible for expression of LTP. Strong evidence from this laboratory reveals the involvement of a variety of signaling molecules (*e.g.,* CaMKⅡ, PKC, calmodulin, calcineurin, *etc.*) in the expression of both hippocampal LTP and gLTP[30,31].

The involvement of endogenous serotonin is indicated by absence of HFS-induced gLTP in ganglia of animals treated with reserpine (3 mg/kg) to remove serotonin. However, when these ganglia were treated with serotonin or m-CPBG (a 5-HT$_3$-receptor agonist), HFS invariably induced expression of gLTP (Table 2)[15].

IN VIVO EXPRESSION OF GLTP

An expected outcome from *in vivo* manifestation of gLTP in ganglia is a long-lasting enhancement of sympathetic tone that outflows to the cardiovascular system. Work from this laboratory has established the consequences of *in vivo* induction of gLTP in sympathetic ganglia on blood pressure[29,32,33]. We hypothesize that CNS repetitive activity causes similar outflow to preganglionic nerves, which together with endogenous serotonin may trigger expression of gLTP of sympathetic ganglia. Expression of gLTP produces prolonged and steady increase of sympathetic tone to the cardiovascular resulting in hypertension and disturbed cardiac rhythm (Figure 1).

We hypothesized that chronic psychosocial stress can induce *in vivo* expression of gLTP in sympathetic ganglia, which results in a constant rise in sympathetic tone thus contributing to or initiating a rise of blood pressure. We tested this hypothesis in four animal models of hypertension; aged rats, spontaneously hypertensive rat (SHR), obese Zucker rat and the psychosocial stress model[28,33-35]. We investigated the existence of gLTP in ganglia from these models. For example, in psychosocially stressed hypertensive rats, treatment with tropisetron (ICS; a 5-HT$_3$ receptor antagonist) resulted in normalizing blood pressure of these rats (Figure 2; ref. [29]). Parallel outcomes were obtained in SHR and obese Zucker rat[29,32]. This strongly indicated that the hypertension seen in these animals was, at least partly, due to expression of gLTP.

To further ascertain the existence of gLTP in ganglia isolated from these animal models we showed that "basal" transmission in these ganglia was markedly potentiated (Figure 3A) and that this potentiation was blocked when ganglia were treated with 5-HT$_3$ receptor antagonists[29,32,33,35] (Figure 3B). In another series of experiments, we hypothesized that *in vitro* HFS will not induce gLTP in ganglia isolated from hypertensive old rats if, in fact, gLTP has been expressed already in these ganglia *in vivo*. Whereas HFS produced strong gLTP in ganglia isolated from normotensive adult rats, no gLTP was seen in ganglia from old rats[28,35] (Figure 3C). It is worthy to note that in these series, to ascertain the specificity of 5-HT$_3$ receptor we used three different selective antagonists; bemesetron, tropisetron and ondansetron (Zo-

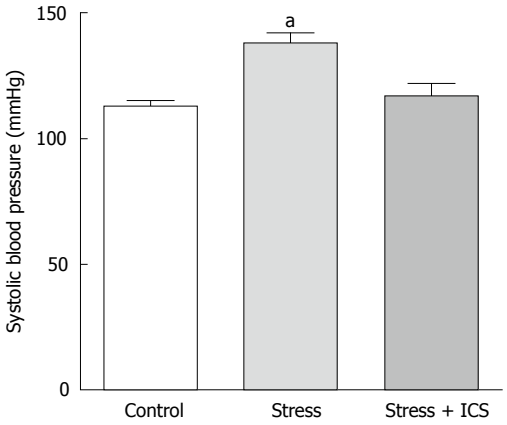


Figure 2 Tropisetron (ICS) normalizes established stress hypertension in psychosocially stressed male rats without affecting blood pressure in control (unstressed) rats measured at day 30 of continuous stress. Blood pressure was measured by tail-cuff plethysmography. Similar results were obtained from female rats. Each point in each group is the mean ± SD from 5 male or female rats. (a) indicates significant difference from other groups (Adapted from ref. [29]).

fran), all were equally effective in blocking gLTP[28,33-35].

POTENTIAL INDUCTION OF GLTP IN BRAIN ILLNESSES AND BY DRUGS

Any procedure that can induce continuous intense flow of impulses from the brain to autonomic ganglia could cause a sustained increase of sympathetic tone to the cardiovascular system, may lead to or contribute to disorders of the system[28-30,32,33,36] (Figure 1). The expression of gLTP in autonomic ganglia that may cause hypertension and cardiac arrhythmias can be a serious risk factor for morbidity and mortality. Evidence that associates expression of gLTP with hypertension has been determined for chronic psychosocial stress[28-30,32,33,36]. Other possible inducers of gLTP are discussed in the following sections.

POSTTRAUMATIC STRESS DISORDER

This serious type of stress results from experiencing harsh distressing occurrences for example witnessing injuries or death, exposure to natural disasters, or experiencing a life-threatening accident. Posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is an incapacitating and potentially chronic disorder characterized by substantial illness. Although similar in some features to chronic stress, PTSD has distinctive pathology[37]. In the first few years following the traumatic event, some PTSD patients may recover, but up to 40% remain chronically symptomatic for years[38]. The major brain areas implicated in the manifestation of PTSD are the prefrontal cortex, amygdala, and hippocampus[39]. During a traumatic event the amygdala sends intensifying impulses to various areas of the brain including prefrontal cortex, hypothalamus, hippocampus and brain stem nuclei. During the course of PTSD, intensified brain activity has been described. For example, PTSD patients showed augmented spontaneous activity in the amygdala and frontal cortex[40]. Moreover, PTSD is linked to increased sympathetic activity represented by elevated blood pressure increased heart rate, and/or increased adrenergic transmitter release[41]. This increase in sympathetic activity could be due to expression of gLTP in autonomic ganglia. However, whether gLTP is present in ganglia during the progression of PTSD and whether cardiovascular disorders are due to gLTP in autonomic ganglia remain to be explored in animal models of PTSD.

EPILEPSY

The excessive and abnormal cortical brain activity in epilepsy is transmitted through the brain stem to the rest of the body and can usually cause various types of seizures. Strong stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system often accompany seizures and can cause hypertension, dispersed injury of myocytes, and increased predisposition to ventricular arrhythmias[42,43]. Several areas in the brain are involved in the cardiovascular effect of epileptic seizures such as the hypothalamus and medulla oblongata, particularly nuclei of the nucleus tractus solitarius, and area postrema, which are closely engaged in regulation of cardiovascular function[44-46]. Therefore, enhanced activity of these areas is communicated to autonomic ganglia and may provide the required repetitive activity that triggers the expression of gLTP in these ganglia. The expression of gLTP results in long-term enhancement of sympathetic tone to the cardiovascular system, causing hypertension and neurogenic cardiac arrhythmias, which can be major risk factors for sudden unexpected death in epilepsy, a dangerous clinical difficulty for certain epileptic patients, especially those with chronic, inadequately controlled seizures.

NICOTINE

Epileptiform brain activity was recorded in the brains of young rats treated with nicotine[47]. In humans, chronic use of tobacco products is known to cause enhanced cholinergic activity in the brain[48-50]. Nicotine can also augment peripheral sympathetic activity through activation of postganglionic nicotinic acetylcholine receptors[51,52]. Moreover, nicotine can release epinephrine from the adrenal medulla into the blood[53,54]. Thus, nicotine causes stimulation of the cardiovascular system that increases heart rate and causes hypertension by action on both peripheral and central sites[53]. Hence, since epileptic patients are more likely to be chronic tobacco users[55], such chronic use of nicotine may result in the expression of gLTP in ganglia or enhancement of the impacts of already expressed gLTP in epileptic tobacco users, thus intensify the risk for cardiovascular dysfunction that may cause sudden death[56].

CAFFEINE

Caffeine, a competitive inhibitor of adenosine receptors,

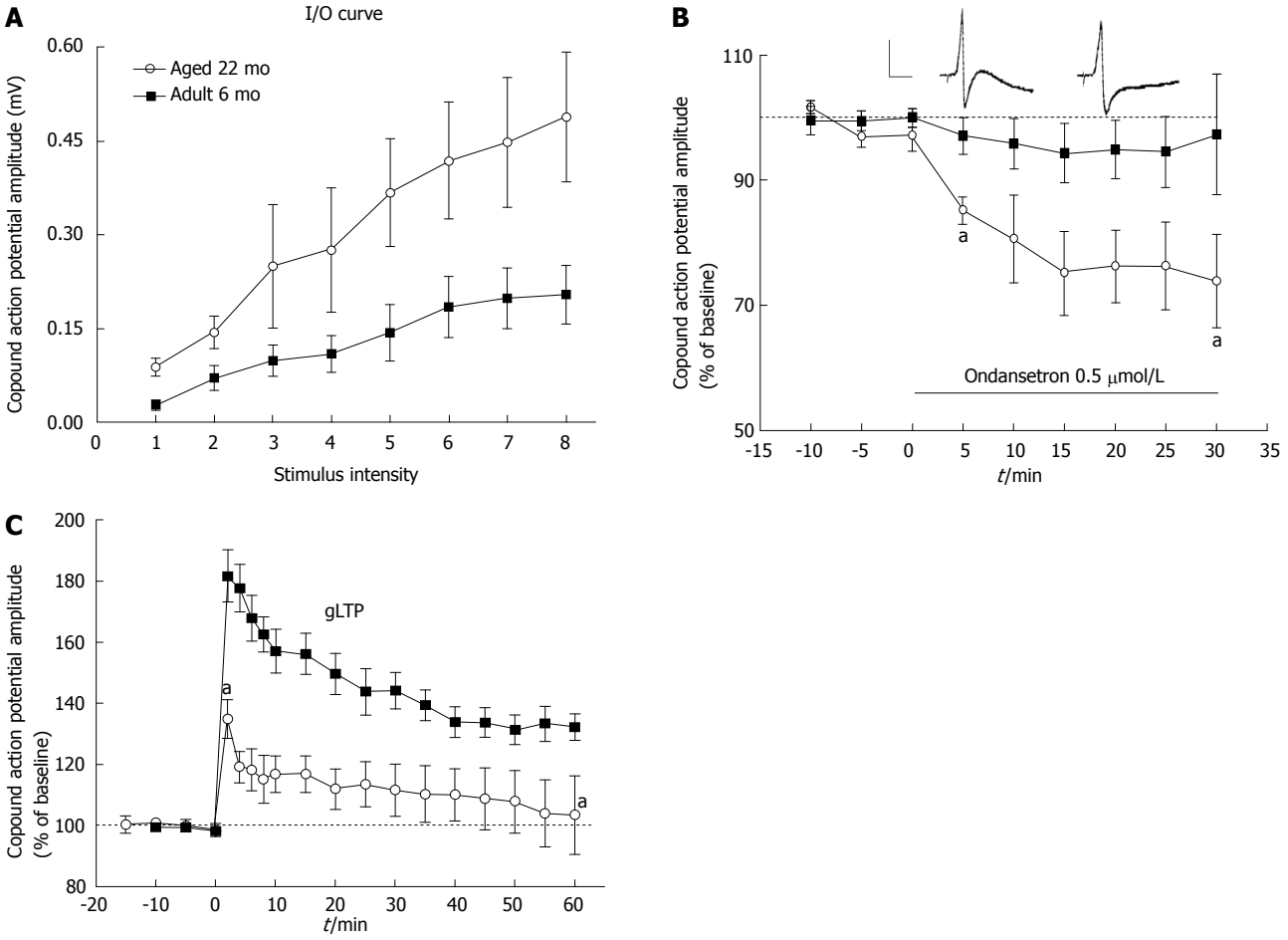


Figure 3 Expression of ganglionic long-term potentiation in sympathetic superior cervical ganglia in aged (22 mo) hypertensive rats. A: Input/output curve (I/O) of aged animal ganglia compared to adult (6 mo) ganglia, indicating enhanced synaptic activity in the aged animal ganglia. Stimulus intensity numbers along the X-axis are arbitrary values, where 1 is the minimal and 8 the maximal response (CAP amplitude in mV). Each point from aged rats is significantly different from matching points of adult rats, and is the mean ± SEM from 5-7 ganglia; B: Inhibition of "baseline" ganglionic transmission in aged rats by a 5-HT$_3$ receptor antagonist ondansetron (Zofran) as an indication of expression of gLTP *in vivo*. Zofran (0.5 μmol/L, solid horizontal line) decreased CAP baseline of ganglia isolated from aged but not of those isolated from adult rats. All points between the two "a" are significantly different ($P < 0.05$) from corresponding point for adult rats. Each point in each series is the mean ± SEM from 5-7 ganglia. Inset: CAPs of aged rats before and after application of drug; calibration 0.5 mV/20 ms; C: High frequency stimulation (HFS: 20 Hz/20 s, at 0 time) of the preganglionic nerves evoked robust gLTP in ganglia excised from adult rats. Identical protocol in ganglia from aged rats produced no gLTP. Each point represents the mean ± SEM from 5 ganglia. Adapted from ref. [35]. gLTP: Ganglionic long-term potentiation; CAP: Compound action potential.

is the most extensively used CNS stimulant because it is consumed in a variety of hot and cold drinks, as well as many prescription and over-the-counter medications. Neuroimaging studies reports show that by acting on brain cortex, caffeine enhances attention and mental arousal[57-59]. However, there is no convincing evidence that the usual doses of caffeine increase the risk of heart attack, sudden cardiac death, or disruption of cardiac rhythm. Nonetheless, a new caffeine source are the so called "energy drinks", which contain uncommonly hefty doses of caffeine. Consumption of such energy drinks may lead to platelet and endothelial dysfunction, which can cause myocardial infarction and other cardiovascular disorders in healthy young adults[60-62] (for review see ref. [63]). Through stimulation of the CNS, heavy frequent intake of caffeine-containing drinks may trigger gLTP in sympathetic ganglia, which could be responsible for the reported cardiovascular disturbances. The danger may be even greater when such consumption of large doses of caffeine is coupled with heavy use of tobacco products.

AMPHETAMINES AND COCAINE

The amphetamines work mainly by modifying the catecholamine system in the pleasure center of the brain[64]. They increase levels of major catecholamines such as dopamine and norepinephrine in a dose-dependent manner[65-67]. A case-control study has linked the use of one of the most commonly used CNS stimulant, methylphenidate (Ritalin), to sudden death in children and teenagers[68].

Cocaine inhibits the monoamine reuptake mechanism in central and peripheral sympathetic nerve terminals in humans[69-71] with end effects similar to those seen with amphetamines. This however, may not be the sole CNS effect of cocaine inasmuch as other reuptake inhibitors do not have cocaine-like effects. The abuse of cocaine is correlated with cardiovascular dysfunction including hypertension, ventricular dysrhythmia, acute myocardial

infarction, and left ventricular hypertrophy. Therefore, the chronic use of CNS stimulants such as amphetamine and cocaine may trigger expression of gLTP, which may lead to morbidity and/or sudden death.

CONCLUSION

Abnormal strong brain activity as in epileptic seizures cause intense activation of ganglionic neurons, which can induce gLTP in sympathetic ganglia leading to long-term heightened sympathetic tone to the cardiovascular system with the ensuing rise in blood pressure and disturbed heart rhythm. Abnormal CNS activity can result from severe brain injuries, ongoing psychological stress, epilepsy, and regular abuse of CNS stimulating substances. Even though these disorders can cause disturbances of the function of the cardiovascular system, their possible link to gLTP has not been studied, except in chronic psychosocial stress. Therefore, it is necessary to determine such links in order to develop therapeutic plans to avoid serious consequences such as sudden cardiac death.

REFERENCES

1 **Bliss TV**, Lomo T. Long-lasting potentiation of synaptic transmission in the dentate area of the anaesthetized rabbit following stimulation of the perforant path. *J Physiol* 1973; **232**: 331-356 [PMID: 4727084 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1973.sp010273]

2 **Volle RL**. Enhancement of neuromuscular responses to acetylcholine and succinylcholine following repetitive stimulation of the motor nerve. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther* 1966; **160**: 284-293 [PMID: 5954031]

3 **Dunant Y**, Dolivo M. Plasticity of synaptic functions in the exised sympathetic ganglion of the rat. *Brain Res* 1968; **10**: 271-273 [PMID: 5683552 DOI: 10.1016/0006-8993(68)90134-0]

4 **Brown TH**, McAfee DA. Long-term synaptic potentiation in the superior cervical ganglion. *Science* 1982; **215**: 1411-1413 [PMID: 6278593 DOI: 10.1126/science.6278593]

5 **Briggs CA**, McAfee DA, McCaman RE. Long-term potentiation of synaptic acetylcholine release in the superior cervical ganglion of the rat. *J Physiol* 1985; **363**: 181-190 [PMID: 2991505 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1985.sp015703]

6 **Briggs CA**, McAfee DA. Long-term potentiation at nicotinic synapses in the rat superior cervical ganglion. *J Physiol* 1988; **404**: 129-144 [PMID: 2855347 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1988.sp017282]

7 **Alonso-deFlorida F**, Morales MA, Minzoni AA. Modulated long-term potentiation in the cat superior cervical ganglion in vivo. *Brain Res* 1991; **544**: 203-210 [PMID: 2039938 DOI: 10.1016/0006-8993(91)90055-Z]

8 **Bachoo M**, Polosa C. Preganglionic axons from the third thoracic spinal segment fail to induce long-term potentiation in the superior cervical ganglion of the cat. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol* 1992; **70** Suppl: S27-S31 [PMID: 1338296 DOI: 10.1139/y92-240]

9 **Weinreich D**, Undem BJ, Taylor G, Barry MF. Antigen-induced long-term potentiation of nicotinic synaptic transmission in the superior cervical ganglion of the guinea pig. *J Neurophysiol* 1995; **73**: 2004-2016 [PMID: 7623097]

10 **Minota S**, Kumamoto E, Kitakoga O, Kuba K. Long-term potentiation induced by a sustained rise in the intraterminal Ca2+ in bull-frog sympathetic ganglia. *J Physiol* 1991; **435**: 421-438 [PMID: 1685189 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1991.sp018517]

11 **Koyano K**, Kuba K, Minota S. Long-term potentiation of transmitter release induced by repetitive presynaptic activities in bull-frog sympathetic ganglia. *J Physiol* 1985; **359**: 219-233 [PMID: 2860240 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1985.sp015582]

12 **Kumamoto E**, Kuba K. Sustained rise in ACh sensitivity of a sympathetic ganglion cell induced by postsynaptic electrical activities. *Nature* 1983; **305**: 145-146 [PMID: 6604228 DOI: 10.1038/305145a0]

13 **Kumamoto E**, Kuba K. Mechanism of long-term potentiation of transmitter release induced by adrenaline in bullfrog sympathetic ganglia. *J Gen Physiol* 1986; **87**: 775-793 [PMID: 2873199 DOI: 10.1085/jgp.87.5.775]

14 **Scott TR**, Bennett MR. The effect of ions and second messengers on long-term potentiation of chemical transmission in avian ciliary ganglia. *Br J Pharmacol* 1993; **110**: 461-469 [PMID: 8220908 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.1993.tb13833.x]

15 **Alkadhi KA**, Salgado-Commissariat D, Hogan YH, Akpaudo SB. Induction and maintenance of ganglionic long-term potentiation require activation of 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT3) receptors. *J Physiol* 1996; **496** (Pt 2): 479-489 [PMID: 8910231 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1996.sp021700]

16 **Martin AR**, Pilar G. Presynaptic and post-synaptic events during post-tetanic potentiation and facilitation in the avian ciliary ganglion. *J Physiol* 1964; **175**: 17-30 [PMID: 14241155 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1964.sp007500]

17 **Magleby KL**, Zengel JE. A quantitative description of tetanic and post-tetanic potentiation of transmitter release at the frog neuromuscular junction. *J Physiol* 1975; **245**: 183-208 [PMID: 165286 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1975.sp010840]

18 **Bennett MR**. Nitric oxide release and long term potentiation at synapses in autonomic ganglia. *Gen Pharmacol* 1994; **25**: 1541-1551 [PMID: 7721027 DOI: 10.1016/0306-3623(94)90353-0]

19 **Brain KL**, Bennett MR. Calcium in the nerve terminals of chick ciliary ganglia during facilitation, augmentation and potentiation. *J Physiol* 1995; **489** (Pt 3): 637-648 [PMID: 8788930 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1995.sp021079]

20 **Lin YQ**, Bennett MR. Nitric oxide modulation of quantal secretion in chick ciliary ganglia. *J Physiol* 1994; **481** (Pt 2): 385-394 [PMID: 7537816 DOI: 10.1113/jphysiol.1994.sp020447]

21 **Madison DV**, Schuman EM. LTP, post or pre? A look at the evidence for the locus of long-term potentiation. *New Biol* 1991; **3**: 549-557 [PMID: 1680385]

22 **Johnston D**, Williams S, Jaffe D, Gray R. NMDA-receptor-independent long-term potentiation. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1992; **54**: 489-505 [PMID: 1314043 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.ph.54.030192.002421]

23 **Derkach V**, Surprenant A, North RA. 5-HT3 receptors are membrane ion channels. *Nature* 1989; **339**: 706-709 [PMID: 2472553 DOI: 10.1038/339706a0]

24 **Nichols RA**, Mollard P. Direct observation of serotonin 5-HT3 receptor-induced increases in calcium levels in individual brain nerve terminals. *J Neurochem* 1996; **67**: 581-592 [PMID: 8764583 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.1996.67020581.x]

25 **Alzoubi KH**, Bedawi AS, Aleisa AM, Alkadhi KA. Hypothyroidism impairs long-term potentiation in sympathetic ganglia: electrophysiologic and molecular studies. *J Neurosci Res* 2004; **78**: 393-402 [PMID: 15389831 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.20268]

26 **Coote JH**, Westbury DR. Intracellular recordings from sympathetic preganglionic neurones. *Neurosci Lett* 1979; **15**: 171-175 [PMID: 530526 DOI: 10.1016/0304-3940(79)96108-1]

27 **Bachoo M**, Heppner T, Fiekers J, Polosa C. A role for protein kinase C in long term potentiation of nicotinic transmission in the superior cervical ganglion of the rat. *Brain Res* 1992; **585**: 299-302 [PMID: 1324771 DOI: 10.1016/0006-8993(92)91223-2]

28 **Alkadhi KA**, Alzoubi KH, Aleisa AM, Tanner FL, Nimer AS. Psychosocial stress-induced hypertension results from in vivo expression of long-term potentiation in rat sympathetic ganglia. *Neurobiol Dis* 2005; **20**: 849-857 [PMID: 16005635 DOI: 10.1016/j.nbd.2005.05.020]

29 **Alkadhi KA**, Alzoubi KH, Aleisa AM. Plasticity of synaptic transmission in autonomic ganglia. *Prog Neurobiol* 2005; **75**: 83-108 [PMID: 15784301 DOI: 10.1016/j.pneurobio.2005.02.002]

30 **Alzoubi KH**, Aleisa AM, Alkadhi KA. Expression of gLTP in sympathetic ganglia of obese Zucker rats in vivo: molecular evidence. *J Mol Neurosci* 2008; **35**: 297-306 [PMID: 18563301 DOI: 10.1007/s12031-008-9110-6]

31 **Gerges NZ**, Alzoubi KH, Alkadhi KA. Role of phosphorylated

CaMKII and calcineurin in the differential effect of hypothyroidism on LTP of CA1 and dentate gyrus. *Hippocampus* 2005; **15**: 480-490 [PMID: 15714506 DOI: 10.1002/hipo.20073]

32 **Gerges NZ**, Aleisa AM, Alhaider AA, Alkadhi KA. Reduction of elevated arterial blood pressure in obese Zucker rats by inhibition of ganglionic long-term potentiation. *Neuropharmacology* 2002; **43**: 1070-1076 [PMID: 12504912 DOI: 10.1016/S0028-3908(02)00283-6]

33 **Alkadhi KA**, Otoom SA, Tanner FL, Sockwell D, Hogan YH. Inhibition of ganglionic long-term potentiation decreases blood pressure in spontaneously hypertensive rats. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2001; **226**: 1024-1030 [PMID: 11743138]

34 **Gerges NZ**, Aleisa AM, Schwarz LA, Alkadhi KA. Chronic psychosocial stress decreases calcineurin in the dentate gyrus: a possible mechanism for preservation of early ltp. *Neuroscience* 2003; **117**: 869-874 [PMID: 12654339 DOI: 10.1016/S0306-4522(02)00766-2]

35 **Alzoubi KH**, Aleisa AM, Alkadhi KA. In vivo expression of ganglionic long-term potentiation in superior cervical ganglia from hypertensive aged rats. *Neurobiol Aging* 2010; **31**: 805-812 [PMID: 18649973 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2008.06.007]

36 **Alkadhi K**, Alzoubi K. Role of long-term potentiation of sympathetic ganglia (gLTP) in hypertension. *Clin Exp Hypertens* 2007; **29**: 267-286 [PMID: 17653963 DOI: 10.1080/10641960701500356]

37 **Vieweg WV**, Julius DA, Fernandez A, Beatty-Brooks M, Hettema JM, Pandurangi AK. Posttraumatic stress disorder: clinical features, pathophysiology, and treatment. *Am J Med* 2006; **119**: 383-390 [PMID: 16651048 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2005.09.027]

38 **Kessler RC**, Sonnega A, Bromet E, Hughes M, Nelson CB. Posttraumatic stress disorder in the National Comorbidity Survey. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1995; **52**: 1048-1060 [PMID: 7492257 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.1995.03950240066012]

39 **Brunello N**, Davidson JR, Deahl M, Kessler RC, Mendlewicz J, Racagni G, Shalev AY, Zohar J. Posttraumatic stress disorder: diagnosis and epidemiology, comorbidity and social consequences, biology and treatment. *Neuropsychobiology* 2001; **43**: 150-162 [PMID: 11287794]

40 **Yan X**, Brown AD, Lazar M, Cressman VL, Henn-Haase C, Neylan TC, Shalev A, Wolkowitz OM, Hamilton SP, Yehuda R, Sodickson DK, Weiner MW, Marmar CR. Spontaneous brain activity in combat related PTSD. *Neurosci Lett* 2013; **547**: 1-5 [PMID: 23643995 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2013.04.032]

41 **Morris MC**, Rao U. Psychobiology of PTSD in the acute aftermath of trauma: Integrating research on coping, HPA function and sympathetic nervous system activity. *Asian J Psychiatr* 2013; **6**: 3-21 [PMID: 23380312 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajp.2012.07.012]

42 **Ishiguro Y**, Morgan JP. Effect of endogenous catecholamine on myocardial stunning in a simulated ischemia model. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2001; **15**: 111-116 [PMID: 11468020]

43 **Shimizu M**, Kagawa A, Takano T, Masai H, Miwa Y. Neurogenic stunned myocardium associated with status epileptics and postictal catecholamine surge. *Intern Med* 2008; **47**: 269-273 [PMID: 18277028]

44 **Colice GL**. Neurogenic pulmonary edema. *Clin Chest Med* 1985; **6**: 473-489 [PMID: 3907948]

45 **Stauffer AZ**, Dodd-o J, Lathers CM. The relationship of the lock-step phenomenon and precipitous changes in mean arterial blood pressure. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol* 1989; **72**: 340-345 [PMID: 2467800 DOI: 10.1016/0013-4694(89)90070-9]

46 **Davison DL**, Terek M, Chawla LS. Neurogenic pulmonary edema. *Crit Care* 2012; **16**: 212 [PMID: 22429697 DOI: 10.1186/cc11226]

47 **Hralová M**, Marešová D, Riljak V. Effect of the single-dose of nicotine-administration on the brain bioelectrical activity and on behaviour in immature 12-day-old rats. *Prague Med Rep* 2010; **111**: 182-190 [PMID: 20946718]

48 **Rose JE**, Behm FM, Salley AN, Bates JE, Coleman RE, Hawk TC, Turkington TG. Regional brain activity correlates of nicotine dependence. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2007; **32**: 2441-2452 [PMID: 17356570 DOI: 10.1038/sj.npp.1301379]

49 **Gloria R**, Angelos L, Schaefer HS, Davis JM, Majeskie M, Richmond BS, Curtin JJ, Davidson RJ, Baker TB. An fMRI investigation of the impact of withdrawal on regional brain activity during nicotine anticipation. *Psychophysiology* 2009; **46**: 681-693 [PMID: 19490513 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-8986.2009.00823.x]

50 **Beaver JD**, Long CJ, Cole DM, Durcan MJ, Bannon LC, Mishra RG, Matthews PM. The effects of nicotine replacement on cognitive brain activity during smoking withdrawal studied with simultaneous fMRI/EEG. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2011; **36**: 1792-1800 [PMID: 21544072 DOI: 10.1038/npp.2011.53]

51 **Haass M**, Kübler W. Nicotine and sympathetic neurotransmission. *Cardiovasc Drugs Ther* 1997; **10**: 657-665 [PMID: 9110108 DOI: 10.1007/BF00053022]

52 **Adamopoulos D**, van de Borne P, Argacha JF. New insights into the sympathetic, endothelial and coronary effects of nicotine. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2008; **35**: 458-463 [PMID: 18307741 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1681.2008.04896.x]

53 **Hill P**, Wynder EL. Smoking and cardiovascular disease. Effect of nicotine on the serum epinephrine and corticoids. *Am Heart J* 1974; **87**: 491-496 [PMID: 4817106 DOI: 10.1016/0002-8703(74)90174-4]

54 **Grunberg NE**, Popp KA, Bowen DJ, Nespor SM, Winders SE, Eury SE. Effects of chronic nicotine administration on insulin, glucose, epinephrine, and norepinephrine. *Life Sci* 1988; **42**: 161-170 [PMID: 3275854 DOI: 10.1016/0024-3205(88)90679-0]

55 **Ferguson PL**, Chiprich J, Smith G, Dong B, Wannamaker BB, Kobau R, Thurman DJ, Selassie AW. Prevalence of self-reported epilepsy, health care access, and health behaviors among adults in South Carolina. *Epilepsy Behav* 2008; **13**: 529-534 [PMID: 18585962 DOI: 10.1016/j.yebeh.2008.05.005]

56 **Rong L**, Frontera AT, Benbadis SR. Tobacco smoking, epilepsy, and seizures. *Epilepsy Behav* 2014; **31**: 210-218 [PMID: 24441294 DOI: 10.1016/j.yebeh.2013.11.022]

57 **Koppelstaetter F**, Poeppel TD, Siedentopf CM, Ischebeck A, Kolbitsch C, Mottaghy FM, Felber SR, Jaschke WR, Krause BJ. Caffeine and cognition in functional magnetic resonance imaging. *J Alzheimers Dis* 2010; **20** Suppl 1: S71-S84 [PMID: 20182040]

58 **Koppelstaetter F**, Poeppel TD, Siedentopf CM, Ischebeck A, Verius M, Haala I, Mottaghy FM, Rhomberg P, Golaszewski S, Gotwald T, Lorenz IH, Kolbitsch C, Felber S, Krause BJ. Does caffeine modulate verbal working memory processes? An fMRI study. *Neuroimage* 2008; **39**: 492-499 [PMID: 17936643 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroimage.2007.08.037]

59 **Park CA**, Kang CK, Son YD, Choi EJ, Kim SH, Oh ST, Kim YB, Park CW, Cho ZH. The effects of caffeine ingestion on cortical areas: functional imaging study. *Magn Reson Imaging* 2014; **32**: 366-371 [PMID: 24512799 DOI: 10.1016/j.mri.2013.12.018]

60 **Worthley MI**, Prabhu A, De Sciscio P, Schultz C, Sanders P, Willoughby SR. Detrimental effects of energy drink consumption on platelet and endothelial function. *Am J Med* 2010; **123**: 184-187 [PMID: 20103032 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2009.09.013]

61 **Thyagarajan B**, Alagusundaramoorthy SS, Agrawal A. Atrial Fibrillation Due to Over The Counter Stimulant Drugs in A Young Adult. *J Clin Diagn Res* 2015; **9**: OD05-OD07 [PMID: 26435989 DOI: 10.7860/jcdr/2015/13483.6330]

62 **Ibrahim NK**, Iftikhar R. Energy drinks: Getting wings but at what health cost? *Pak J Med Sci* 2014; **30**: 1415-1419 [PMID: 25674149 DOI: 10.12669/pjms.306.5396]

63 **Lippi G**, Cervellin G, Sanchis-Gomar F. Energy Drinks and Myocardial Ischemia: A Review of Case Reports. *Cardiovasc Toxicol* 2016; **16**: 207-212 [PMID: 26320007 DOI: 10.1007/s12012-015-9339-6]

64 **Bidwell LC**, McClernon FJ, Kollins SH. Cognitive enhancers for the treatment of ADHD. *Pharmacol Biochem Behav* 2011; **99**: 262-274 [PMID: 21596055 DOI: 10.1016/j.pbb.2011.05.002]

65 **Miller GM**. The emerging role of trace amine-associated receptor 1 in the functional regulation of monoamine transporters and dopaminergic activity. *J Neurochem* 2011; **116**: 164-176 [PMID: 21073468 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2010.07109.x]

66 **Mikkelsen E**, Lake CR, Brown GL, Ziegler MG, Ebert MH. The hyperactive child syndrome: peripheral sympathetic nervous system function and the effect of d-amphetamine. *Psychiatry Res* 1981; **4**: 157-169 [PMID: 6939007 DOI: 10.1016/0165-1781(81)90019-6]

67 **Eiden LE**, Weihe E. VMAT2: a dynamic regulator of brain monoaminergic neuronal function interacting with drugs of abuse. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2011; **1216**: 86-98 [PMID: 21272013 DOI: 10.1111/

j.1749-6632.2010.05906.x]
68 **Gould MS**, Walsh BT, Munfakh JL, Kleinman M, Duan N, Olfson M, Greenhill L, Cooper T. Sudden death and use of stimulant medications in youths. *Am J Psychiatry* 2009; **166**: 992-1001 [PMID: 19528194 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ajp.2009.09040472]
69 **Melon PG**, Boyd CJ, McVey S, Mangner TJ, Wieland DM, Schwaiger M. Effects of active chronic cocaine use on cardiac sympathetic neuronal function assessed by carbon-11-hydroxyephedrine. *J Nucl Med* 1997; **38**: 451-456 [PMID: 9074537]
70 **Vongpatanasin W**, Mansour Y, Chavoshan B, Arbique D, Victor RG. Cocaine stimulates the human cardiovascular system via a central mechanism of action. *Circulation* 1999; **100**: 497-502 [PMID: 10430763 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.100.5.497]
71 **Lange RA**, Hillis LD. Cardiovascular complications of cocaine use. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 351-358 [PMID: 11484693 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200108023450507]

P- Reviewer: Takahashi H, Unger M **S- Editor**: Gong XM
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Lu YJ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

World J Pharmacol 2016 September 9; 5(3): 59-67

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJP World Journal of Pharmacology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2016-2019

The *World Journal of Pharmacology* Editorial Board consists of 455 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in pharmacology. They are from 42 countries, including Australia (13), Austria (3), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (3), Bulgaria (1), Canada (12), Chile (2), China (46), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (2), Egypt (1), Finland (3), France (13), Germany (7), Greece (17), Hungary (6), Iceland (1), India (11), Iran (4), Ireland (1), Israel (12), Italy (39), Japan (30), Malaysia (1), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Russia (1), Saint Kitts and Nevis (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Serbia (1), Singapore (7), South Korea (9), Spain (22), Sweden (4), Switzerland (2), Thailand (1), Turkey (6), United Kingdom (19), and United States (131).

Ke Lan, *Chengdu*
George Pak-Heng Leung, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Jun Li, *Beijing*
Zhi-Xiu Lin, *Hong Kong*
Xiao-Dong Liu, *Nanjing*
Xin-Yong Liu, *Jinan*
Liang Peng, *Shenyang*
Mei Qiang, *Taiyuan*
Yong-Yong Shi, *Shanghai*
Jing-Fang Wang, *Shanghai*
Yong-Qing Wang, *Nanjing*
Chi-Ming Wong, *Hong Kong*
William Ka Kei Wu, *Hong Kong*
Ruian Xu, *Xiamen*
Xiao-Qiang Yao, *Hong Kong*
Wei-Hai Ying, *Shanghai*
Shu-Biao Zhang, *Dalian*
Yu Zhang, *Beijing*

Czech Republic

Kamil Kuca, *Hradec Kralove*

Denmark

Morten Grunnet, *Ballerup*
Yasser A Mahmmoud, *Aarhus*

Egypt

Nagwa MN El-Din, *Alexandria*

Finland

Seppo Kahkonen, *Helsinki*
Hannu I Kankaanranta, *Seinajoki*
Helder A Santos, *Helsinki*

France

Eric Boue-Grabot, *Bordeaux*
Christian Bronner, *Illkirch*
Rene Bruno, *Marseille*
Marie-Chantal Canivenc-Lavier, *Dijon*
Bertrand Cariou, *Nantes*
Emmanuelle Corruble, *Le Kremlin Bicêtre*
Gerard,Siest, *Nancy*
Laurent Karila, *Villejuif*
Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
Tangui Maurice, *Montpellier*
Fernando Rodrigues-Lima, *Paris*
Jean-Marc Sabatier, *Rousset*
Steeve H Thany, *Angers*

Germany

Axel Becker, *Magdeburg*
Thomas Efferth, *Mainz*
Florian Lang, *Tuebingen*
Huige Li, *Mainz*
Frank Thevenod, *Witten*
Michael Wink, *Heidelberg*
Jianbo Xiao, *Würzburg*

Greece

Panagiotis G Anagnostis, *Thessaloniki*
Charalambos Antoniades, *Athens*
Ekaterini Chatzaki, *Alexandroupolis*
Vassilis J Demopoulos, *Thessaloniki*
Moses S Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Panagiotis P Ferentinos, *Athens*
Dimitrios Galaris, *Ioannina*
Tzortzis Nomikos, *Athens*
Constantinos M Paleos, *Aghia PAraskevi*
George Panagis, *Rethymno*
Andreas Papapetropoulos, *Patras*
Kosmas I Paraskevas, *Athens*
George P Patrinos, *Patras*
Evangelos Rizos, *Ioannina*
Despina Sanoudou, *Athens*
Konstantinos N Syrigos, *Athens*
Ioannis S Vizirianakis, *Thessaloniki*

Hungary

Albert Császár, *Budapest*
Peter Hamar, *Budapest*
Peter Krajcsi, *Budaors*
Gabor Maksay, *Budapest*
Attila J Miseta, *Cserkut*
Joseph Molnar, *Szeged*

Iceland

Hekla Sigmundsdottir, *Reykjavik*

India

VN Balaji, *Bangalore*
Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
Naibedya Chattopadhyay, *Lucknow*
Swaran JS Flora, *Gwalior*
Rumi Ghosh, *Mumbai*
Srinivas Gopala, *Thiruvananthapuram*
Seetharamappa Jaldappagari, *Dharwad*
Noboru Motohashi,
Basavaraj K Nanjwade, *Karnataka*
Kishore M Paknikar, *Pune*
Vikas Anand Saharan, *Uttarakhand*
Abdus Samad, *Mumbai*

Iran

Payman Adibi, *Isfahan*
Ahmad R Dehpour, *Tehran*
Mehrdad Hamidi, *Zanjan*
Arash Mowla, *Shiraz*

Ireland

Marek W Radomski, *Dublin*

Israel

Galila Agam, *Beer-Sheva*
Robert H Belmaker, *Beer Sheva*
Shomron Ben-Horin, *Tel-Hashomer*
Arik Dahan, *Beer-Sheva*
Hagit Eldar-Finkelman, *Rehovot*
Eliezer Flescher, *Tel Aviv*
Moshe Gavish, *Haifa*
Israel Hanukoglu, *Ariel*
Joseph Kost, *Beer-Shiva*
Irena Manov, *Haifa*
Mordechai Muszkat, *Jerusalem*
Michal Schwartz, *Rehovot*

Italy

Giuseppe Barbaro, *Rome*
Francesca Borrelli, *Napoli*
Franco Borsini, *Pomezia*
Silvio Caccia, *Milan*
Giuseppe M Campo, *Messina*
Raffaele Capasso, *Naples*
Mauro AM Carai, *Cagliari*
Dario Cattaneo, *Milan*
Davide Cervia, *Viterbo*
Giuseppe Cirino, *Napoli*
Emilio Clementi, *Milano*
Massimo Collino, *Torino*
Vincenzo Cuomo, *Rome*
Francesca Fallarino, *Perugia*
Tullio Florio, *Genova*
Vittorio Gentile, *Naples*
Guido Grassi, *Milan*
Mario Grassi, *Trieste*
Annalisa Guaragna, *Napoli*
Milena Gusella, *Trecenta*
Francesco Impagnatiello, *Milan*
Angelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Luca La Colla, *Parma*
Aurelio Leone, *Castelnuovo Magra*
Mauro Magnani, *Urbino*
Mario Marchi, *Genoa*
Silvia Marinelli, *Rome*
Robert Nistico, *Rome*
Francesco Parmeggiani, *Ferrara*
Sabina Passamonti, *Trieste*
Emilio Perucca, *Pavia*
Carlo Riccardi, *Perugia*
Graziano Riccioni, *Chieti*
Sergio Rutella, *Rome*
Gianni Sava, *Trieste*
Pier A Serra, *Sassari*
Luca Steardo, *Roma*
Claudiu T Supuran, *Florence*
Gianluca Tettamanti, *Varese*

Japan

Katsuya Dezaki, *Tochigi*
Jun Fang, *Kumamoto*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Mitsuko Furuya, *Yokohama*
Osamu Handa, *Kyoto*
Kenji Hashimoto, *Chiba*
Zhi-Qing Hu, *Tokyo*
Peng Huang, *Okayama*
Toru Kobayashi, *Niigata*
Hiroshi Kunugi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Makishima, *Itabashi-ku*

Makoto Makishima, *Tokyo*
Takayuki Masaki, *Oita*
Shin-Ichiro Miura, *Fukuoka*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Satomi Onoue, *Shizuoka*
Honoo Satake, *Osaka*
Masaharu Seno, *Okayama*
Yasuyuki Shimada, *AKITA*
Mitsushige Sugimoto, *Shiga*
Masafumi Takahashi, *Tochigi*
Shinji Takai, *Takatsuki*
Yoh Takuwa, *Kanazawa*
Shingo Tsuji, *Osaka*
Hirokazu Tsukahara, *Fukui*
Motoko Unoki, *Fukuoka*
Shizuo Yamada, *Shizuoka*
Norio Yasui-Furukori, *Hirosaki*
Yukio Yoneda, *Kanazawa*

Malaysia

Johnson Stanslas, *Serdang*

Netherlands

Arjan Blokland, *Maastricht*
Eliyahu Dremencov, *Groningen*
Elisa Giovannetti, *Amsterdam*
Hidde J Haisma, *Groningen*
Frank A Redegeld, *Utrecht*
Martina Schmidt, *Groningen*
Frederik M van der Veen, *Rotterdam*
Charles J Vecht, *The Hague*
Joris C Verster, *Utrecht*

New Zealand

Hesham Al-Sallami, *Dunedin*
Lin Yang, *Dunedin*

Poland

Thomas Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Wladyslawa A Daniel, *Krakow*
Andrzej Pilc, *Krakow*

Portugal

Bruno Sarmento, *Porto*
Cristina M Sena, *Coimbra*

Russia

Roman G Efremov, *Moscow*

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Ignacio Lizarraga, *Basseterre*

Saudi Arabia

Mohamed AA Haidara, *Abha*

Serbia

Milan Jokanovic, *Belgrade*

Singapore

Jinsong Bian, *Singapore*
Gavin S Dawe, *Singapore*
Chang Ming Li, *Singapore*
Haishu Lin, *Singapore*
Rajkumar Ramamoorthy, *Singapore*
Gautam Sethi, *Singapore*

South Korea

Ki Churl Chang, *Jinju*
Joohun Ha, *Seoul*
Sang June Hahn, *Seoul*
Byeongmoon Jeong, *Seoul*
Myung Gull Lee, *Gyeonggi-Do*
Won Suk Lee, *Gyeongsangnam-do*
Seung-Yeol Nah, *Seoul*
Kyoungho Suk, *Daegu*
Young-Hyun Yoo, *Busan*

Spain

José L Arias-Mediano, *Granada*
Pedro E Bermejo, *Majadahonda*
Fermin Sánchez de Medina LH, *Granada*
Guillermo Elizondo, *Mexico City*
Leandro Fernandez-Perez, *Las Palmas*
Cristina Fillat, *Barcelona*
J Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Mexico*
Angel LM Gonzalez, *Salamanca*
Tomas Herraiz, *Madrid*
Miguel JA Lainez, *Valencia*
Jose M Lanao, *Salamanca*
ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Vicente Martinez, *Bellaterra*
Faustino Mollinedo, *Salamanca*
Virginia Motilva, *Sevilla*
Gorka Orive, *Victoria*
Ricardo E Perez-Tomas, *Barcelona*
Susana Rodriguez-Couto, *Donostia-San Sebastian*
María E Sáez, *Seville*
Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Juan L Tamargo, *Madrid*
Salvador V Zamora, *Barcelona*

Sweden

Aleksander A Mathe, *Stockholm*
Hari S Sharma, *Uppsala*
Marie-Louise G Wadenberg, *Kalmar*
Cang-Bao Xu, *Lund*

Switzerland

Stefan J Borgwardt, *Basel*
Felicien Karege, *Geneva*

Thailand

Kanokwan Jarukamjorn, *Khon Kaen*

Turkey

Cengiz A Akkaya, *Bursa*
Fatih Canan, *Antalya*
Saygin S Eker, *Bursa*
Sule Apikoglu Rabus, *Istanbul*
Nese Tuncel, *Eskisehir*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*

United Kingdom

Sabine Bahn, *Cambridge*
Christopher J Bushe, *New Malden*
David J Chambers, *London*
Rossen M Donev, *Swansea*
Marco Falasca, *London*
David J Grieve, *Belfast*
Alan J Hargreaves, *Nottingham*
Mahmoud M Iravani, *London*
Nigel Irwin, *Coleraine*
Lin-Hua Jiang, *Leeds*
Veena Kumari, *London*
Kim Lawson, *Sheffield*
Debbi MacMillan, *Glasgow*
Elek Molnár, *Bristol*
Stuart A Rushworth, *Norwich*
Sunita Suri, *Nottingham*
Jinsheng Xu, *Bristol*
Alexander V Zholos, *Belfast*

United States

James D Adams, *Los Angeles*
Nihal Ahmad, *Madison*
Gustav Akk, *St. Louis*
Karim A Alkadhi, *Houston*
Charles Antzelevitch, *Utica*
Hugo R Arias, *Glendale*
Dominick L Auci, *San Diego*
Ross J Baldessarini, *Belmont*
Oleg A Barski, *Louisville*
Bjorn Bauer, *Duluth*
Chengpeng Bi, *Kansas City*
Karina S Blair, *Bethesda*
Bortolato,Marco, *Los Angeles*
Josh Burk, *Williamsburg*
William K Chan, *Stockton*
James J Chen, *Jefferson City*
Zhe-Sheng Chen, *Queens*
Beek Y Chin, *Boston*
Olivier Civelli, *Irvine*
John A Dani, *Houston*
Keith M Erikson, *Greensboro*
Eric R Fedyk, *Cambridge*
Pingfu Feng, *Cleveland*
William D Figg, *Bethesda*
Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
Masayuki Fukata, *Miami*
Bolin Geng, *Waltham*
Arup K Ghose, *West Chester*
Alasdair M Gilfillan, *Bethesda*
Neeraj Gupta, *Cambridge*

World Journal of Pharmacology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 5 Number 3 September 9, 2016

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

World Journal of Pharmacology
Volume 5 Number 3 September 9, 2016

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Pharmacology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 9, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Xiu-Xia Song, Director
Fang-Fang Ji, Vice Director
World Journal of Pharmacology
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-2238242
Fax: +1-925-2238243
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-2238242
Fax: +1-925-2238243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
September 9, 2016

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
http://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Pharmacology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5497/wjp.v5.i3.59

World J Pharmacol 2016 September 9; 5(3): 59-67
ISSN 2220-3192 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Innovate combination of sevoflurane dilution in dimethyl sulfoxide: A stability study by gas chromatography and nuclear magnetic resonance

F Dámaso Fernández-Ginés, Sergio García-Muñoz, Héctor Mateo-Carrasco, Miguel Ángel Rincón-Cervera, Manuel Cortiñas-Sáenz, José Antonio Morales-Molina, Carmen Fernández-Sánchez, Juan Miguel Expósito-López, Ignacio Rodríguez-García

F Dámaso Fernández-Ginés, Carmen Fernández-Sánchez, Department of Pharmacy, Torrecárdenas Hospital, 04009 Almería, Spain

Sergio García-Muñoz, University of Almería, 04120 Almería, Spain

Héctor Mateo-Carrasco, Aseptic Services Unit, Department of Pharmacy, Northampton General Hospital, Northampton NN1 5BD, United Kingdom

Miguel Ángel Rincón-Cervera, Institute of Nutrition and Food Technology, University of Chile, 1058 Santiago, Chile

Manuel Cortiñas-Sáenz, Department of Anesthesiology and Pain Management, Torrecárdenas Hospital, 04009 Almería, Spain

José Antonio Morales-Molina, Department of Pharmacy, Agencia Pública Empresarial Sanitaria Hospital de Poniente, El Ejido, 04700 Almería, Spain

Juan Miguel Expósito-López, Ignacio Rodríguez-García, Department of Chemistry and Physics, University of Almería, 04120 Almería, Spain

Author contributions: Fernández-Ginés FD, García-Muñoz S and Mateo-Carrasco H contributed equally to this work; Rincón-Cervera MÁ participated in the acquisition, analysis, and interpretation of chromatograms; Cortiñas-Sáenz M, Morales-Molina JA and Fernández-Sánchez C were the guarantor and designed the study; Expósito-López JM participated in the acquisition, analysis, and interpretation of nuclear magnetic resonance spectra; Rodríguez-García I revised the article critically for important intellectual content.

Institutional review board statement: This research has not involved human and/or animal subjects, hence none IRBS was required.

Informed consent statement: This research has not involved human and/or animal subjects, hence none ICS was required.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to report.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Héctor Mateo-Carrasco, MPharm, PhD, MRPharmS, Specialist Pharmacist Cancer Services, Aseptic Services Unit, Department of Pharmacy, Northampton General Hospital, Cliftonville Road, Northampton NN1 5BD, United Kingdom. hector.mateo-carrasco@ngh.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-160-545333

Received: April 8, 2016
Peer-review started: April 11, 2016
First decision: July 21, 2016
Revised: July 26, 2016
Accepted: August 30, 2016
Article in press: August 31, 2016
Published online: September 9, 2016

Abstract

AIM

To investigate physicochemical stability of sevoflurane

in dimethyl sulfoxide using gas chromatography with a flame ionization detector and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR).

METHODS

Undiluted sevoflurane, plus dilutions 1:2, 1:5, 1:10, 1:25, and 1:50 in dimethyl sulfoxide were prepared in a vertical laminar flow cabinet class Ⅱ type B and stored at different temperatures (23 ℃, 6 ℃, and -10 ℃) for 45 d. Sterile 1 mL polypropylene amber syringes to minimize light degradation, caps and needles were used. The presence of sevoflurane and its degradation products in the samples was determined by gas chromatography with flame ionization detector (260 ℃, 40 min), and by ^{1}H, ^{19}F, and proton-decoupled ^{19}F nuclear magnetic resonance.

RESULTS

The gas chromatography analysis showed sevoflurane and dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) retention times were 2.7 and 13.0 min, respectively. Pure DMSO injection into the column resulted in two additional peaks at 2.1 and 2.8 min. The same sevoflurane peak at 2.7 min was observed in all the dilutions at -10 ℃, 4 ℃ and 25 ℃. The NMR spectra showed signals consistent with the sevoflurane structure in all the dilutions at -10 ℃, 4 ℃ and 25 ℃. In the ^{1}H spectrum, two signals corresponding to the sevoflurane molecule were observed at 5.12 and 4.16 parts per million (ppm[5]). In the ^{19}F-NMR spectrum, two signals were observed at -76.77 ppm and -157.13 ppm. In the ^{19}F NMR CPD, two signals were observed at -76.77 ppm and -157.13 ppm. The first one showed a doublet (JF-F = 3.1 Hz) which integrated by six fluorine nuclei from the hexafluoro-isopropyl group. The second signal was integrated by a fluorine atom and showed a septuplet (JF-F = 3.1 Hz).

CONCLUSION

This study shows that different concentrations of sevoflurane in dimethyl sulfoxide retain their chemical composition after exposure to different temperatures for a period of 45 d.

Key words: Sevoflurane; Dimethyl sulfoxide; Uclear magnetic resonance; Gas chromatography; Skin ulcers; Drug stability

Core tip: Direct topical application of anesthetic sevoflurane has recently shown beneficial properties in the management of chronic vascular ulcers. A more convenient formulation could be obtained using solutions of sevoflurane in a miscible solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide. However, no study has yet assessed the physicochemical and pharmaceutical stability of these formulations. Different concentrations of sevoflurane in dimethyl sulfoxide were stored over 45 d at -10 ℃, 4 ℃ and 25 ℃ and assayed by gas chromatography with a flame ionization detector and nuclear magnetic resonance, showing that molecular structures remained unaltered after exposure to a range of temperatures.

Fernández-Ginés FD, García-Muñoz S, Mateo-Carrasco H, Rincón-Cervera MÁ, Cortiñas-Sáenz M, Morales-Molina JA, Fernández-Sánchez C, Expósito-López JM, Rodríguez-García I. Innovate combination of sevoflurane dilution in dimethyl sulfoxide: A stability study by gas chromatography and nuclear magnetic resonance. *World J Pharmacol* 2016; 5(3): 59-67 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v5/i3/59.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v5.i3.59

INTRODUCTION

Sevoflurane [1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoro-2-(fluoromethoxy) propane] is a highly-fluorinated methyl-isopropyl ether-derived molecule. Chemically, it is a sweet-smelling, non-flammable, colorless substance used as an inhaled anesthetic in the induction and maintenance of general anesthesia in adult and pediatric patients[1]. It has been documented that sevoflurane instillation into skin ulcers has a rapid, intense, and durable anesthetic effect. Despite the existence of some favorable safety data, uncertainty exists on the direct effects of topical undiluted sevoflurane due to its high concentration[2-4].

Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, C_2H_6OS) is a polar aprotic solvent able to solubilize sevoflurane. Chemically, it is a low-volatile, transparent, colorless, hygroscopic substance with wide applications as topical pharmaceutical vehicle because of its ability to penetrate biological membranes. It has shown analgesic, healing, oxygen free-radical scavenger, and antimicrobial properties after topical application[5-11].

As both sevoflurane and DMSO have shown usefulness and safety in preliminary studies in topical administration for the treatment of ulcers, we designed a study aimed at assessing the physicochemical stability of several sevoflurane concentrations in DMSO at different temperatures over 45 d. Stability was assessed using gas chromatography with a flame ionization detector (GC-FID) and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). To our knowledge, no similar study on the stability of sevoflurane in DMSO has been reported in the literature.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Sevoflurane's stability was defined as the maintenance of its physicochemical, microbiological, and biopharmaceutical properties within the specified range during its lifespan, under the influence of several ambient factors such as temperature, humidity, and light exposure[12].

Dilution preparation

Sevorane® 100% v/v (AbbVie®, Campoverde di Aprilia, Italy) was used in the preparation of dilutions using DMSO 99% (Fagron Ibérica, Terrassa, Spain) as a

solvent. Six different sevoflurane-in-DMSO dilutions were used: Undiluted sevoflurane, and dilutions 1:2, 1:5, 1:10, 1:25, and 1:50. One milliliter aliquots were prepared as follows: 0.02 mL of sevoflurane and 0.98 mL of DMSO (1:50), 0.04 mL of sevoflurane and 0.96 mL of DMSO (1:25), 0.9 mL of sevoflurane and 0.1 mL of DMSO (1:10), 0.2 mL of sevoflurane and 0.8 mL of DMSO (1:5), and 0.5 mL of sevoflurane and 0.5 mL of DMSO. Dilutions were prepared in a vertical laminar flow cabinet class Ⅱ type B (Telstar® AH-100, Terrassa, Spain), using sterile 1 mL polypropylene amber syringes to minimize light degradation, caps and needles. Fifteen syringes divided into three sets were prepared, each set consisting of five syringes with different sevoflurane concentrations. The required volume of sevoflurane was drawn up into the syringe and the volume was made up to 1 mL with DMSO. Syringes were shaken gently to allow homogenization of the dilution, secured with caps to prevent product volatilization and sealed in opaque and isotherm polystyrene boxes with freeze blocks inside.

Temperature exposure

The first set of syringes was stored in a dry sealed box stored in a refrigerator at 4 ℃ ± 2 ℃. The second set of syringes was stored in a locked cupboard at room temperature 23 ℃ ± 2 ℃. Finally the third set was stored in a freezer at -10 ℃ ± 2 ℃. Temperature was monitored with digital minimum/maximum thermometers.

Physical analysis

All dilutions were examined for changes in color (against white and black backgrounds), viscosity, and formation of precipitates at the time of preparation and at weekly interval.

Microbiological analysis

Fifty microgram aliquots from each solution were plated on Müeller-Hinton agar enriched with 5% sheep blood (Remel®, Lenexa, Kansas, United States), using a spiral plating device (Microbiology International®, Rockville, Maryland, United States). Plates were incubated at 37 ℃, and the number of colonies growing on the plate was counted after 24 h.

GC-FID

Samples were subjected to treatment with anhydrous sodium sulfate to remove any traces of humidity. One gram of sodium sulfate was added to each sample, vortex-mixed for 1 min and then filtered through 45 μm nylon microfilters. One microliter of each sample was then injected into a gas chromatographer model Focus GC® with a capillary column Omegawax® 250 (30 m, 0.25 mm inner diameter, 0.15 μm film thickness) (Supelco®, Bellefonte, Pasadena, United States) coupled with a flame ionization detector (FID) (Thermo Electron®, Cambridge, United Kingdom). The temperature program was set as follows: 1 min at 40 ℃, heating at 10 ℃/min up to 260 ℃, and maintenance at 260 ℃ for 40 min. The injector temperature was 250 ℃ and the detector temperature was 270 ℃. Nitrogen was used as carrier gas at a rate of 1 mL/min and with a split flow of 20:1. Sevorane® and pure DMSO were analyzed separately following the same procedure in order to obtain a reference for the retention time of sevoflurane and DMSO, as well as to detect the presence of any manufacturing-derived impurity prior to the mixing and storage of the dilutions. The method was validated and applied in concordance with European Pharmacopoeia.

^{1}H and ^{19}F NMR

NMR spectra were acquired using a Bruker Avance DRX 300 MHz® spectrometer equipped with a 5 mm single-axis z-gradient quattro nucleus probe (Bruker Biospin GmbH, Rheinstetten, Germany). A capillary filled with hexadeuterated DMSO (DMSO-d6) was inserted into each NMR tube to obtain a lock signal. All NMR experiments were performed at room temperature. ^{1}H-NMR, coupled ^{19}F-NMR, and proton-decoupled ^{19}F-NMR using a Waltz16 composite proton-decoupling pulse sequence (^{19}F-CPD) spectra were obtained. CPD allows the saturation of the proton channel frequency whilst acquiring the fluorine spectra. This halts the heteronuclear ^{19}F-proton coupling and allows ^{19}F-^{19}F homonuclear coupling only, which is used to confirm an observed ^{1}H-^{19}F coupling. Spectral widths were 3000 and 3700 Hz, respectively. Eight scans were accumulated for ^{1}H and thirty-two for ^{19}F, with an acquisition time of 2.73 and 2.00 s, respectively.

RESULTS

Physical and microbiological analysis

No significant physical or microbiological changes were observed at the storage temperatures after 45 d. Neither color or viscosity changes, nor formation of precipitates were observed at any temperature. At 4 ℃, dilutions 1:10, 1:25, and 1:50 preserved their liquid, colorless state, whereas at -10 ℃ only the undiluted sevoflurane and the 1:2 dilution were liquid. No microbial growth was observed after 24 or 48 h cultures in any sample.

Gas chromatography analysis

Sevoflurane and DMSO retention times were 2.7 and 13.0 min, respectively. Pure DMSO injection into the column resulted in two additional peaks at 2.1 and 2.8 min. These were probably due to manufacturing-derived volatile impurities, most likely dimethyl sulphide (starting material) and dimethyl sulphone (by product), the levels of both impurities were 0.08%. The same peaks were found across all the dilutions of sevoflurane kept at different temperatures (Figure 1). The temperature was maintained at 260 ℃ up to 40 min and the chromatogram baseline was amplified in order to search

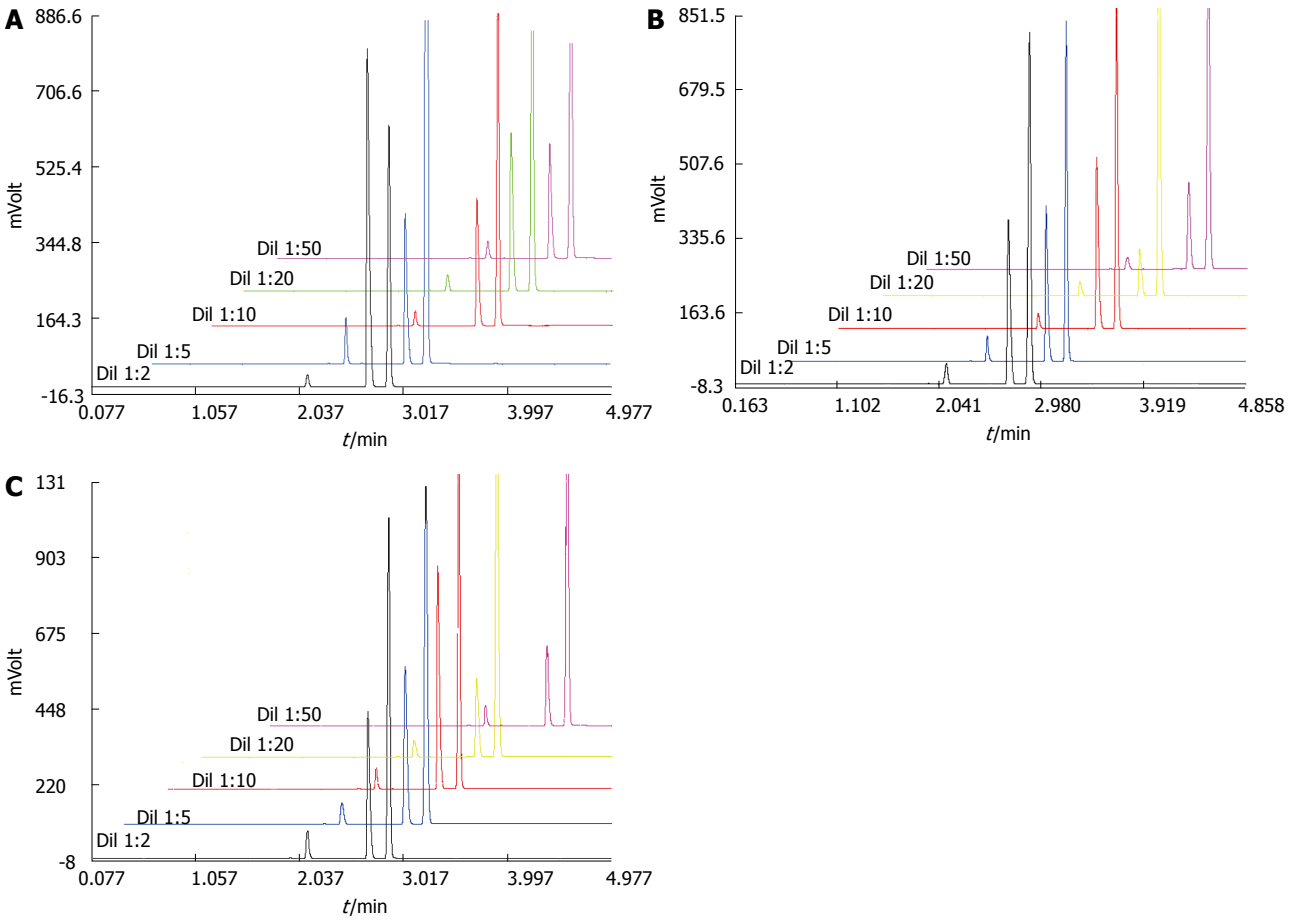


Figure 1 Chromatogram amplification showing the sevoflurane peak at 2.7 min in the different dilutions at -10 ℃ (A), 4 ℃ (B) and 25 ℃ (C).

for possible degradation by-products.

NMR analysis

The ^{1}H, ^{19}F and ^{19}F-CPD NMR reference spectra acquired from undiluted sevoflurane are shown in Figure 2. The ^{1}H and ^{19}F-NMR spectra of all the dilutions kept at different temperatures are represented in Figure 3.

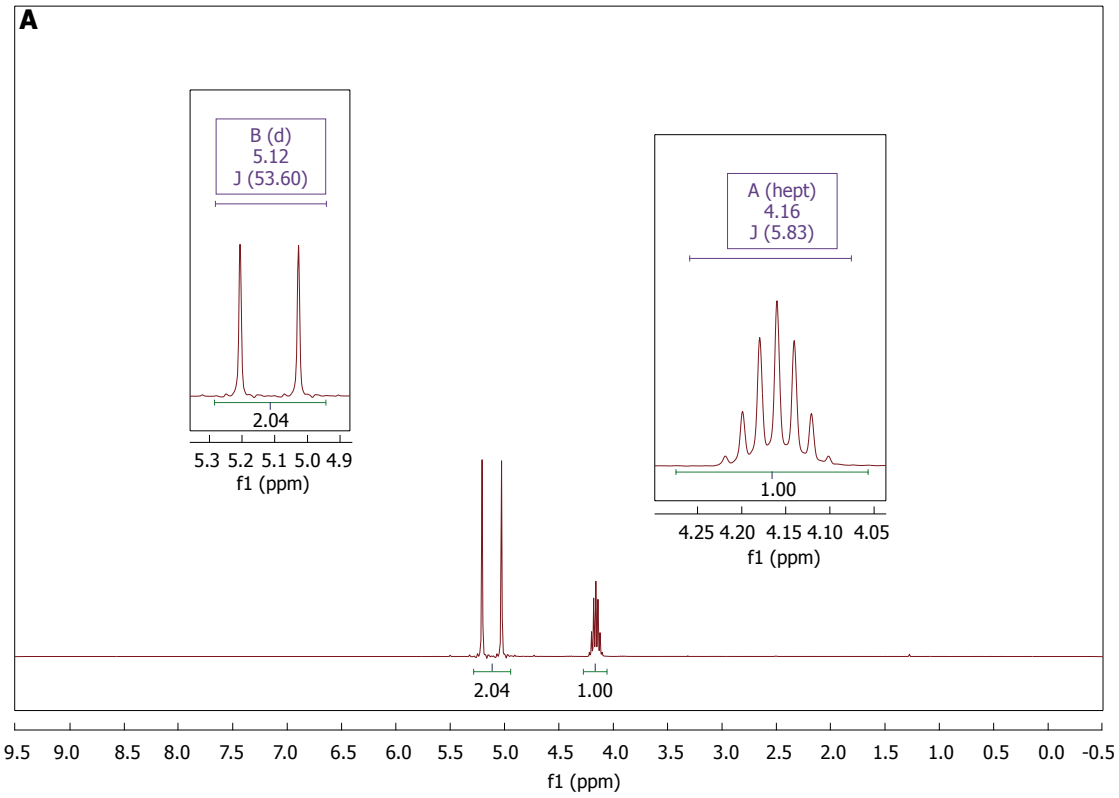
In the ^{1}H spectrum, two signals corresponding to the sevoflurane molecule were observed at 5.12 and 4.16 parts per million (ppm[5]). The signal at 5.12 ppm was integrated by two protons with a doublet multiplicity (coupling constant $J_{H\text{-}F}$ = 53.6 Hz), which was assigned to the protons of the fluoromethoxy group (-OCH_2F). The signal at 4.16 ppm was a septet that integrated one proton (coupling constant $J_{H\text{-}F}$ = 5.8 Hz), which was assigned to the proton from the hexafluoro-isopropyl group $(CF_3)_2CH$-.

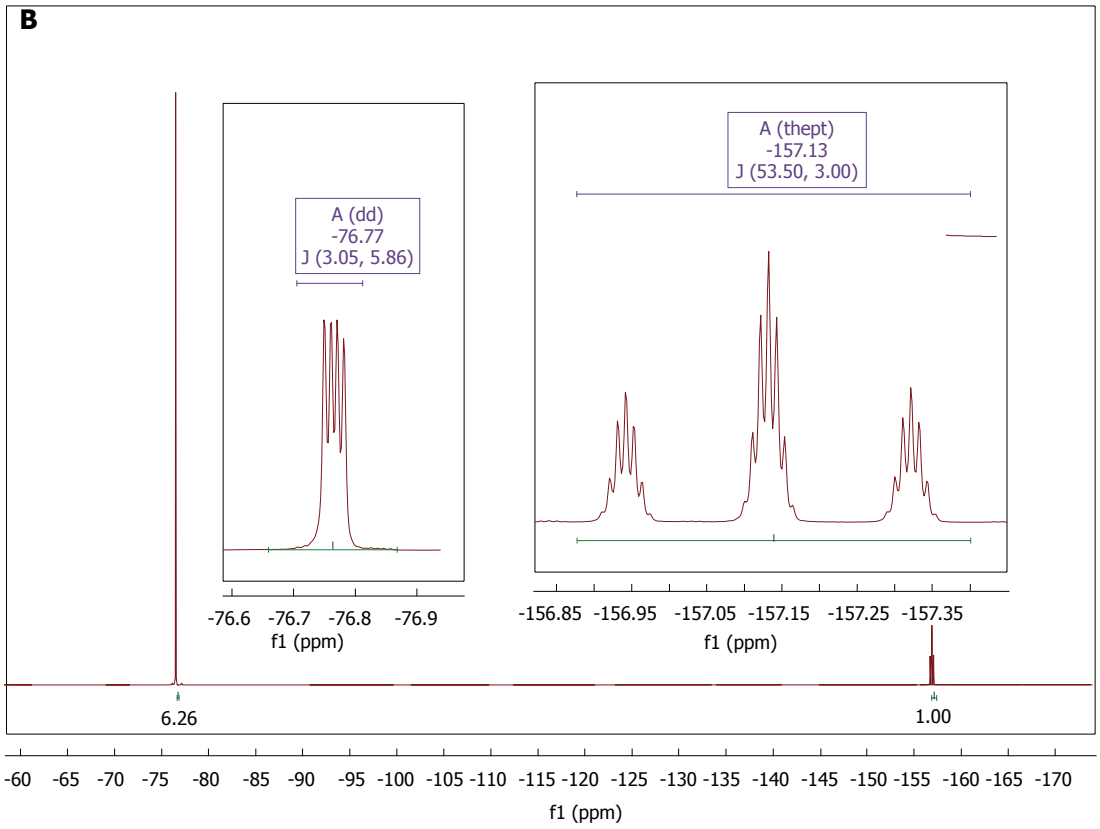
In the ^{19}F-NMR spectrum, two signals were observed at -76.77 ppm and -157.13 ppm. The signal at -76.77 ppm was integrated by six fluorine atoms, consisting of a double-doublet with coupling constants J_1 = 5.9 Hz and J_2 = 3.1 Hz, corresponding to the hexafluoro-isopropyl group $(CF_3)_2CH$-. The multiplicity in this case was due to the coupling of six fluorine atoms with the only proton of the group ($J_{1F\text{-}H}$ = 5.9 Hz); there was a long range coupling with the fluorine atom from the fluoromethoxy group ($J_{2F\text{-}F}$ = 3.1 Hz). The signal at -157.13 ppm integrated for one fluorine nucleus and was a triple-heptuplet with coupling constants J_1 = 53.5 Hz and J_2 = 3 Hz, corresponding to the fluorine atom from the fluoromethoxy group (-OCH_2F). The multiplicity could be explained due to the coupling between the fluorine atom and two adjacent protons ($J_{1F\text{-}H}$ = 53.5Hz), and a long-range five-bond coupling between the fluorine nucleus in the fluoromethoxy group and the $(CF_3)_2CH$- fluorine nuclei ($J_{5F\text{-}F}$ = 3.0 Hz).

In the ^{19}F NMR CPD, two signals were observed at -76.77 ppm and -157.13 ppm. The first one showed a doublet ($J_{F\text{-}F}$ = 3.1 Hz) which integrated by six fluorine nuclei from the hexafluoroisopropyl group. The second signal was integrated by a fluorine atom and showed a septuplet ($J_{F\text{-}F}$ = 3.1 Hz).

DISCUSSION

This study shows that different concentrations of sevoflurane in DMSO (ranging from the undiluted product to a 1:50 dilution) preserve their chemical structure after exposure to a range of temperatures (-10 ℃, 4 ℃, and 25 ℃) over 45 d. No sevoflurane by-products were detected in any of the samples. To our knowledge, the stability of sevoflurane solutions in DMSO has never been


A
B (d)
5.12
J (53.60)
2.04
5.3 5.2 5.1 5.0 4.9
f1 (ppm)
A (hept)
4.16
J (5.83)
1.00
4.25 4.20 4.15 4.10 4.05
f1 (ppm)
2.04
1.00
9.5 9.0 8.5 8.0 7.5 7.0 6.5 6.0 5.5 5.0 4.5 4.0 3.5 3.0 2.5 2.0 1.5 1.0 0.5 0.0 -0.5
f1 (ppm)


B
A (dd)
-76.77
J (3.05, 5.86)
-76.6 -76.7 -76.8 -76.9
f1 (ppm)
A (thept)
-157.13
J (53.50, 3.00)
-156.85 -156.95 -157.05 -157.15 -157.25 -157.35
f1 (ppm)
6.26
1.00
-60 -65 -70 -75 -80 -85 -90 -95 -100 -105 -110 -115 -120 -125 -130 -135 -140 -145 -150 -155 -160 -165 -170
f1 (ppm)

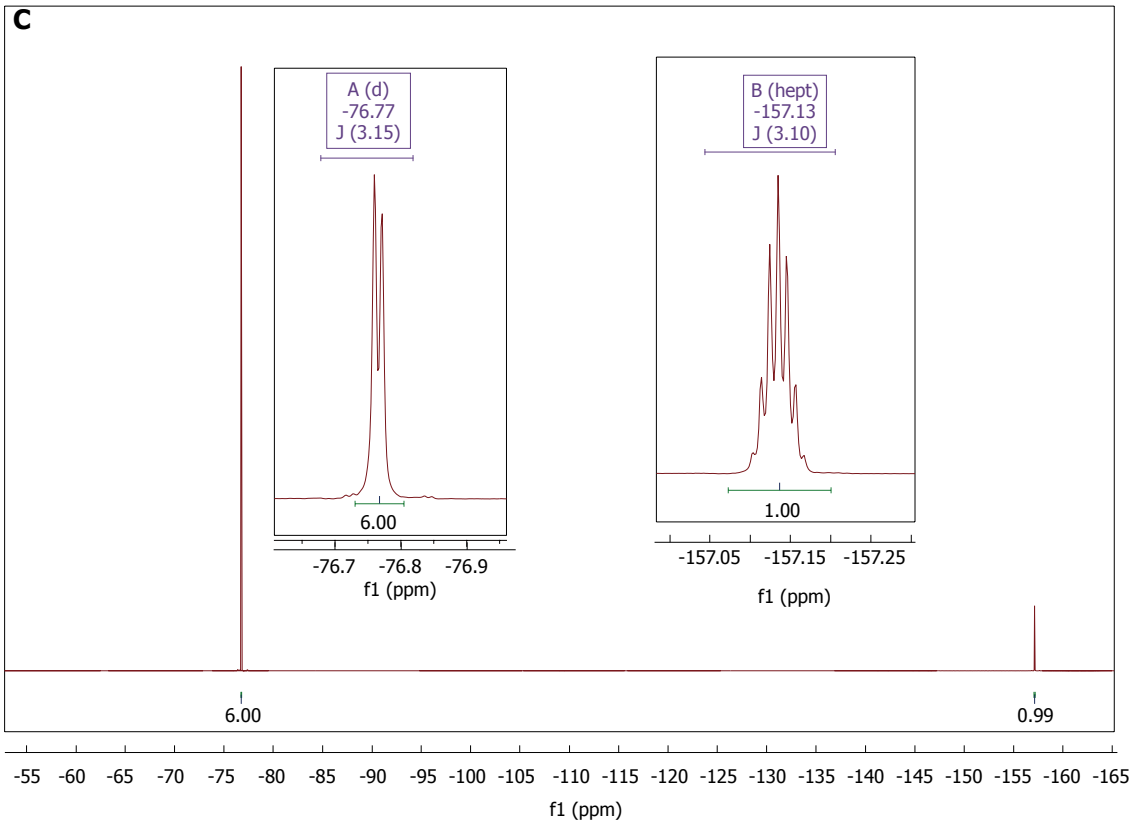


Figure 2 Undiluted sevoflurane nuclear magnetic resonance spectra. A: ^{1}H-NMR; B: Coupled ^{19}F-NMR; C: Proton-decoupled ^{19}F-NMR using a Waltz16 CPD pulse sequence. NMR: Nuclear magnetic resonance; CPD: Composite proton-decoupling.

reported in the literature.

Sevoflurane is a poly-fluorinated methyl-isopropyl ether-derivative commonly used in the induction and maintenance of general anesthesia in both adult and pediatric patients[1]. Recent evidence suggests it might aid healing and mitigate pain associated with vascular ulcers[2-4]. The selection of DMSO as a vehicle for sevoflurane responds to both pharmaceutical and pharmacological needs: It is a polar solvent chemically compatible with sevoflurane over a wide range of concentrations. Additionally, some studies suggest it might possess some analgesic, hydroxyl free-radical scavenger, healing, and antimicrobial properties after topical application[7-11].

Amber polypropylene syringes and caps were used for the preparation and conservation of the aliquots. This responds to the known reactivity between sevoflurane and glass surfaces, which leads to the production of hydrofluoric acid (HF). According to this, an increase in HF concentration would be directly related to the degree of degradation of sevoflurane[13,14].

In this study, two main analytical techniques were used to assess the integrity and physicochemical stability of sevoflurane dilutions: GC-FID and NMR. GC-FID constitutes the gold-standard for the analysis of volatile substances such as sevoflurane[15,16]. This technique combines a high analytical sensibility in the range of parts per billion with a universal response to any compound suffering ionization in the hydrogen flame and with its quantitative capabilities, having a long linear range and low signal-to-noise ratio. NMR is based on the measure of the resonance frequency of active nuclei with spin different from zero (such as ^{1}H and ^{19}F) of a molecule in the presence of a high magnetic field. Given that sevoflurane contains seven fluorine atoms in its structure, combined NMR measuring of ^{19}F and ^{1}H nuclei is an ideal option for the characterization of both sevoflurane and any eventual by-product[17-21]. In the case of finding such breakdown compounds, it would be feasible to quantify the amount of degradation by any of the two techniques, preferably by GC. In addition, GC and NMR are analytical techniques recommended by the European and the American Pharmacopoeias, as well as by the International Conference on Harmonization guidelines (ICH) to study the chemical stability of drugs[22-24]. In the GC analysis, the chromatogram of each sample was compared with those of the reference commercial sevoflurane and the DMSO used. The levels of both impurities observed, dimethyl sulphide (starting material) and dimethyl sulphone (by product), were 0.08%, DMSO impurities are controlled in the PhE at 0.1%[25]. No additional peaks other than those previously present were detected even after a chromatographic run of 40 min raising the oven temperature to 260 ℃. The chromatogram baseline was amplified and searched for such impurities and the results were consistent in all the samples with the absence of degradation.

In the NMR study, sevoflurane signals were observed

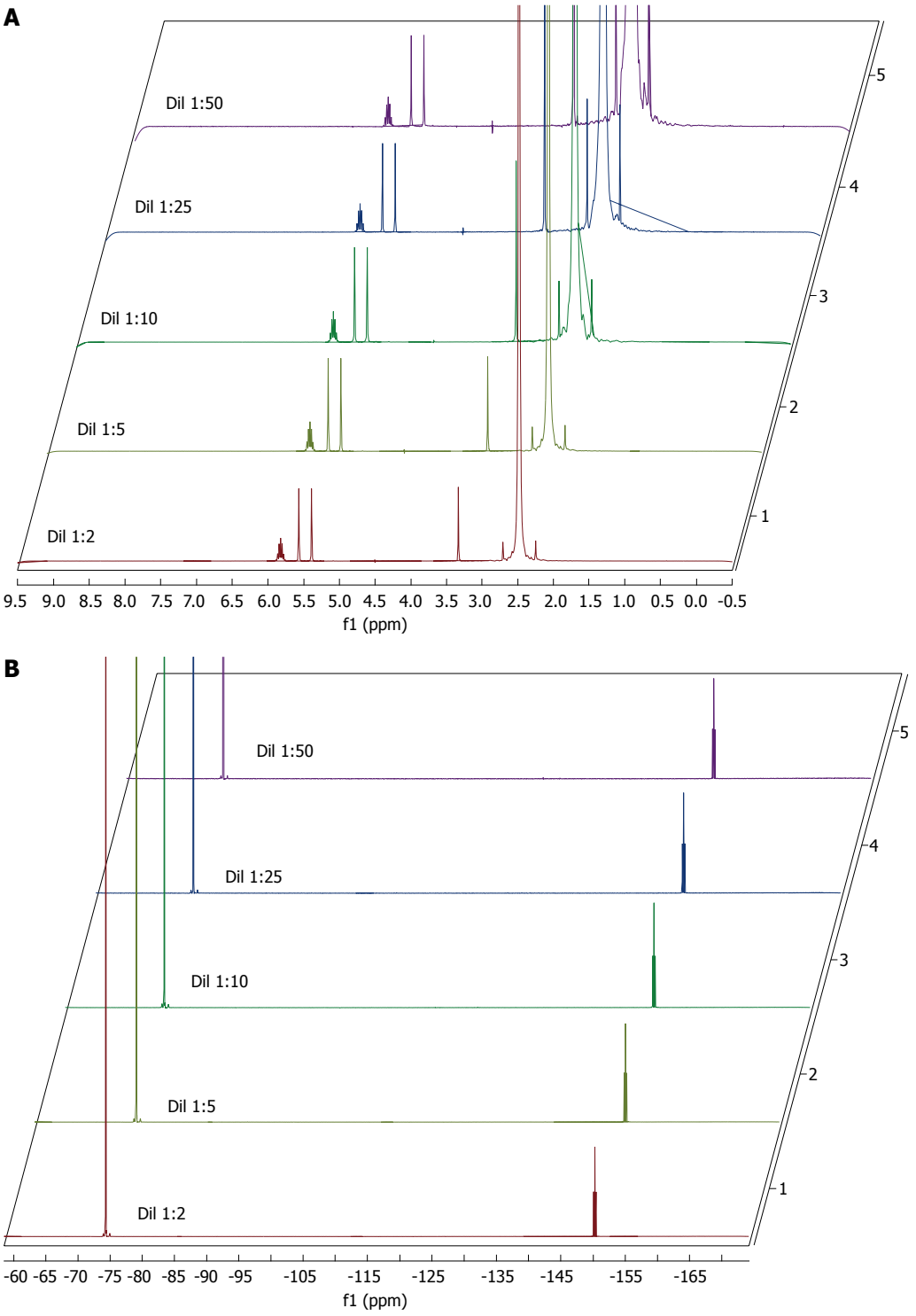


Figure 3 ^{1}H-nuclear magnetic resonance (A) and ^{19}F-nuclear magnetic resonance (B) of solutions kept at all temperatures. The images have been adjusted and sevoflurane peaks assigned the same height so that dimethyl sulfoxide and water signals in the ^{1}H spectrum increase inversely to concentration.

in both ^{1}H and ^{19}F spectra, regardless of the temperature conditions. This confirms the structural integrity of the sevoflurane molecule at a range of temperatures and concentrations, including the undiluted product, as well as the absence of other sevoflurane breakdown products.

Limitations

Caveats associated with these findings rely on the need for longer-term stability assays in order to evaluate the effects of temperature on sevoflurane at different times. Additionally, the effects of light exposure were not assessed.

In conclusion, this study confirms that the chemical structure of sevoflurane structure remains stable both diluted in DMSO at different concentrations and in pure state when subjected to a range of temperatures longer

than a month in polypropylene syringes. These findings warrant further investigation, particularly in light of its potential applications in the management of pain and healing associated to skin ulcers.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Thanks to Torrecárdenas Hospital and University of Almería. The results presented in this study are part of the doctoral thesis of F. Dámaso Fernández Ginés, which is currently being carried out at the University of Granada, within the Doctoral Program in Pharmacy.

COMMENTS

Background

Direct topical application of anesthetic sevoflurane has recently shown beneficial properties in the management of chronic vascular ulcers. A more convenient formulation could be obtained using solutions of sevoflurane in a miscible solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide. However, no study has yet assessed the physicochemical and pharmaceutical stability of these formulations.

Research frontiers

The treatment of skin ulcer and structural drug analysis by nuclear magnetic resonance has progressed immensely in recent years. Assessing the physicochemical stability of sevoflurane in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) solutions becomes essential in view of the potential therapeutic applications of such solutions in the management of vascular ulcers.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The present study shows that different sevoflurane in DMSO solutions are stable from a physicochemical and pharmaceutical point of view at a range of temperatures for up to 45 d. This has important implications in the formulation of new pharmaceutical forms aimed at improving the management of vascular ulcers.

Applications

The data in this study suggested that both drugs can be preloaded in polypropylene syringes and stored at different temperatures for the topical management of chronic vascular ulcers.

Terminology

Vascular ulcers are a type of skin ulcer characterized by a painful sore (usually of the lower leg), accompanied by disintegration of tissue which mostly affects the epidermis, often portions of the dermis, or even subcutaneous fat. Its management requires the generalized use of topical and systemic analgesia. However, these agents often cause severe systemic adverse effects. Some recent evidence suggests that topical instillation of sevoflurane on the vascular ulcer has a rapid, intense, and durable anesthetic and healing effect.

Peer-review

The study is detailed and well-made and the paper accurately written. The results reported in this study have been obtained by gas chromatography and NMR experiments, clearly and precisely described. This paper is worthy of publication.

REFERENCES

1 **Sevorane®**. Technical data sheet. AbbVie, FT-61451. 2007. [accessed 2015 Apr 23] Available from: URL: https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/medicine/49

2 **Gerónimo-Pardo M**, Martínez-Monsalve A, Martínez-Serrano M. Analgesic effect of topical sevoflurane on venous leg ulcer with intractable pain. *Schattauer* 2011; **2**: 95-97. Available from: URL: Available from: URL: http://phlebo.schattauer.de/de/inhalt/archiv/issue/1396/manuscript/16058/download.html

3 **Martínez A**, Gerónimo M. Sevoflurano como anestésico local en herida isquémica de paciente cardiópata con insuficiencia respiratoria secundaria a morfina. *Heridas y Cicatrización* 2011; **6**: 46-49

4 **Gerónimo M**, Martínez M, Martínez A, Rueda JL. Usos alternativos del sevoflurano. Efecto analgésico tópico. *Rev Electron Anestesia R* 2012; **4**: 181

5 **Capriotti K**, Capriotti JA. Dimethyl sulfoxide: history, chemistry, and clinical utility in dermatology. *J Clin Aesthet Dermatol* 2012; **5**: 24-26 [PMID: 23050031]

6 **Bradley M**, Cullum N, Nelson EA, Petticrew M, Sheldon T, Torgerson D. Systematic reviews of wound care management: (2). Dressings and topical agents used in the healing of chronic wounds. *Health Technol Assess* 1999; **3**: 1-35 [PMID: 10683589 DOI: 10.3310/hta31720]

7 **Miranda-Tirado R**. Dimethyl sulfoxide therapy in chronic skin ulcers. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1975; **243**: 408-411 [PMID: 1055558 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1975.tb25383.x]

8 **Lishner M**, Lang R, Kedar I, Ravid M. Treatment of diabetic perforating ulcers (mal perforant) with local dimethylsulfoxide. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 1985; **33**: 41-43 [PMID: 3880781 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.1985.tb02858.x]

9 **Duimel-Peeters IGP**, Houwing RH, Teunissen CP, Berger MPF, Snoeckx V, Halfens RJG. A systematic review of the efficacy of topical skin application of dimethyl sulfoxide on wound healing and as an anti-inflammatory drug. *Wounds UK* 2003; **15**: 361-370. Available from: URL: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/25812 0940_A_Systematic_Review_of_the_Efficacy_of_Topical_Skin_Application_of_Dimethyl_Sulfoxide_on_Wound_Healing_and_as_an_Anti-Inflammatory_Drug

10 **Celen O**, Yildirim E, Berberoğlu U. Prevention of wound edge necrosis by local application of dimethylsulfoxide. *Acta Chir Belg* 2005; **105**: 287-290 [PMID: 16018522 DOI: 10.1080/00015458.2005.11679718]

11 **Gaspar M**, Bovaira M, Carrera-Hueso FJ, Querol M, Jiménez A, Moreno L. [Efficacy of a topical treatment protocol with dimethyl sulfoxide 50% in type 1 complex regional pain syndrome]. *Farm Hosp* 2012; **36**: 385-391 [PMID: 22266201 DOI: 10.1016/j.farma.2011.10.009]

12 Note for Guidance on Declaration of Storage Conditions for Medicinal Products in the Product Particulars (Annex to Note for Guidance on Stability Testing of New Active Substances and Medicinal Products) and Active Substances (Annex to Note for Guidance on Stability of Existing Active Substances and Related Finished Products). CPMP/QWP/609/96 Rev 1 (Adoption by CPMP April 2003). London: EMEA, 2003. Available from: URL: http://www.rsihata.com/updateguidance/emea/old/060996en.pdf

13 **Callan CM**. Maker follows up on sevoflurane problem. *J Clin Monit* 1997; **13**: 335 [PMID: 9338848]

14 **Kharasch ED**, Subbarao GN, Cromack KR, Stephens DA, Saltarelli MD. Sevoflurane formulation water content influences degradation by Lewis acids in vaporizers. *Anesth Analg* 2009; **108**: 1796-1802 [PMID: 19448204 DOI: 10.1213/ane.0b013e3181a3d72b]

15 **Bakshi M**, Singh S. Development of validated stability-indicating assay methods--critical review. *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 2002; **28**: 1011-1040 [PMID: 12049968 DOI: 10.1016/S0731-7085(02)00047-X]

16 **Yamakage M**, Hirata N, Saijo H, Satoh JI, Namiki A. Analysis of the composition of 'original' and generic sevoflurane in routine use. *Br J Anaesth* 2007; **99**: 819-823 [PMID: 17959587 DOI: 10.1093/bja/aem296]

17 **Holzgrabe U**, Diehl BW, Wawer I. NMR spectroscopy in pharmacy. *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 1998; **17**: 557-616 [PMID: 9682143 DOI: 10.1016/S0731-7085(97)00276-8]

18 **Evers AS**, Dubois BW. 19F-nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Its use in defining molecular sites of anesthetic action. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1991; **625**: 725-732 [PMID: 2058920 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1991.tb33905.x]

19 **Orhan H**, Commandeur JN, Sahin G, Aypar U, Sahin A, Vermeulen NP. Use of 19F-nuclear magnetic resonance and gas chromatography-electron capture detection in the quantitative analysis of fluorine-

containing metabolites in urine of sevoflurane-anaesthetized patients. *Xenobiotica* 2004; **34**: 301-316 [PMID: 15204701 DOI: 10.1080/716494157]

20 **Xu Y**, Tang P, Zhang W, Firestone L, Winter PM. Fluorine-19 nuclear magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy of sevoflurane uptake, distribution, and elimination in rat brain. *Anesthesiology* 1995; **83**: 766-774 [PMID: 7574056 DOI: 10.1097/00000542-199510000-00016]

21 Cardona D, Castaño MED, Saldarriaga CN, Quiñones W, Torres RLF, Echeverri F. Application of nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) in drugs analysis. *Vitae* 2003; **10**: 80-88. Available from: URL: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/237025733_APLICACION_DE_LA_RESONANCIA_MAGNETICA_NUCLEAR_RMN_EN_EL_ANALISIS_DE_MEDICAMENTOS

22 **Council of Europe (COE)**. European Pharmacopoeia 2007. 6th ed. Strasbourg: Council of Europe, 2007

23 The United States Pharmacopoeia. 31st ed. Rockville, MD: United States Pharmacopoeial Convention (USP), 2007

24 **Singh J**. International conference on harmonization of technical requirements for registration of pharmaceuticals for human use. *J Pharmacol Pharmacother* 2015; **6**: 185-187 [PMID: 26312010]

25 **Council of Europe (COE)**. European Pharmacopoeia 2007. 6th ed. Method 2.4.24, Identification and control of residual solvents. Strasbourg: Council of Europe, 2007

P- Reviewer: Guaragna A, Yanev S **S- Editor**: Kong JX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Lu YJ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com